

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY  
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

---

CLASS 3374

CALL No 417.8 *Lam*

D.G.A. 79.

8 576











# INTRODUCTION TO THE DEVANAGARI SCRIPT

FOR STUDENTS OF  
SANSKRIT, HINDI, MARATHI  
GUJARATI AND BENGALI



# INTRODUCTION TO THE DEVANAGARI SCRIPT

FOR STUDENTS OF  
SANSKRIT, HINDI, MARATHI  
GUJARATI AND BENGALI

BY

H. M. LAMBERT, M.A. Cantab.

*Senior Lecturer in Marathi (Maharaja Gaekwad's Lectureship)  
in the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London*

WITH A FOREWORD BY

PROFESSOR J. R. FIRTH, O.B.E., M.A.

*Professor of General Linguistics in the University of London*



3374

417.8  
Lam

GEOFFREY CUMBERLEGE  
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

MUNSHI RAM MANOHAR LAL

SANSKRIT & HINDI BOOK-SELLERS

NAI SARAK, DELHI-6.

*Oxford University Press, Amen House, London E.C. 4*

GLASGOW NEW YORK TORONTO MELBOURNE WELLINGTON

BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS KARACHI CAPE TOWN IBADAN

*Geoffrey Cumberlege, Publisher to the University*

*First published 1953*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 3374

Date 10. 9. 55

Call No. 417.8 / Lam

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN



## FOREWORD

It is a commonplace of linguistics to acknowledge the debt we owe to the ancient Indian grammarians and to couple with it the name of Sir William Jones. It was he who first set a proper value on the Devanagari and Arabic scripts in his dissertation as President of the Asiatic Society of Bengal on the Orthography of Asiatic Words in Roman Letters. His chart of suggested symbols for the transliteration of the Devanagari, with the addition of letters for Arabic and Persian, is the first presentation of what may be called a phonetic alphabet on such a scale. He finds the Arabic alphabet almost perfect for Arabic itself:—

'Not a letter could be added or taken away without manifest inconvenience. The same may indubitably be said of the Dévanāgarī system, which, as it is more naturally arranged than any other, shall here be the standard of my particular observations on Asiatic letters. Our English alphabet and orthography are disgracefully and almost ridiculously imperfect.'

He aims at using diacritics *common in Europe* rather than new letters—and symbols from 'fluxions' or mathematics—so as to equal the Devanagari itself in precision and clearness.

A system of writing and spelling is the foundation of a system of grammar. Meillet went so far as to say that the foundations of the science of grammar were laid by the Indians. For all languages employing forms of the Devanagari script, the writing system and the spelling carry implications of phonological analysis and statement. They are at once practice and theory and deserve the first attentions of all students. This is well illustrated in Miss Lambert's work on the Devanagari script, and it will be agreed that the presentation of the phonological patterns, such as 'junctions' occurring in words or arising out of 'sandhi' in Sanskrit, and other characteristic patterns in the modern languages, is clear, systematic, and original, and particularly interesting in Bengali. The treatment of conjunct characters in the third chapter of each section is new, and apart from its intrinsic interest may be taken as an indication of what is lost when the structure of the Devanagari system is superseded by the usual roman transliterations. In addition to this study of the writing system, attention is rightly given here to calligraphy, for the practice of the hand is an obligation no less compelling than that of the tongue and both are expressions not only of courteous relations but of disciplined knowledge.

Miss Lambert has consistently applied the All-India Roman Alphabet to all five languages in order to make comparison possible whether the languages are known to the student or not. This treatment could be extended to the Dravidian languages. By this

means it has been found possible to make a systematic statement of the various conventions governing the use of the Sanskrit writing system for the modern languages.

The Sanskrit and Hindi sections are published separately in one volume since they employ one script and will presumably be more generally required, but the appeal of the entire work is to those whose interests range from India through Further India to the Indonesian Islands following the Sanskrit system of writing.

I have been acquainted with Miss Lambert's work in Indian studies since 1937, first in Western India and later as a colleague in London. It gave me great pleasure to be asked to write this brief foreword to her work on a subject which I have always held to be of high importance and the results of which are now offered to students of Sanskrit and the four principal Sanskrit languages of India.

J. R. FIRTH



## PREFACE

GOOD writing, the understanding of the writing system and the formation of a good hand, is as important a part of the study of the written language as good pronunciation is of the study of the spoken language. Yet too little time is usually given to the teaching of writing to students of Sanskrit and of the modern Indian languages; writing is generally left for the student to teach himself as best he can. The result is that many students neither have an adequate understanding of the writing system and the difference between a syllabic and an alphabetic method of representation, nor know how the characters of the script are written and what features are important for the formation of a cultured literate hand. It is hoped that this book will provide not only a guide to students learning to write the scripts which are described in each section, but will also give them a fuller understanding of the special nature of the scripts and the adjustments which are made in the Sanskrit system in order to use it for writing the modern languages of northern India.

The notation used for the transcription of the scripts in this work is the All-India Roman Alphabet devised by Professor J. R. Firth of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, and used already in several publications—A. H. Harley, *Colloquial Hindustani*, T. Grahame Bailey, *Teach Yourself Hindustani*, and my own *Marathi Language Course*. The use of this transcription necessitates the use of certain conventions, particularly that of the representation of the 'inherent vowel', in final characters when listing the contents of each section of the work. The transcription of the Sanskrit terms in the Sanskrit section is entirely systematic; but owing to the varying realization of the characters of the script in certain positions in words in the modern languages, it has been necessary to use in the Contents of the other sections certain conventions which are discussed in the text. An example of such conventions occurs in the writing of such Sanskrit terms, used by grammarians in the modern languages, as 'āntasth' and 'uugm', in which the realization of the 'inherent vowel' of the final character varies from a short glide-vowel to a full syllable. As it is beyond the scope of this work to make a fine analysis of the varying realization of such final characters, it is necessary to establish certain conventions with regard to the transcription of them. These conventions are of necessity anticipated in the Contents.

Some degree of repetition has been inevitable in order to preserve the basic unity of the description of the Devanagari system of writing while allowing for specialization

in each of the languages. While this repetition may at times seem irksome to the reader, it has the advantage of facilitating comparison of one section with another.

The words given in each section to illustrate the writing and reading of the various scripts have been selected in order to provide examples of every character or combination of characters which occurs in the language under consideration. Some characters occur only in colloquial forms or in loanwords from other languages, including English. In order to illustrate the use of all the characters, examples are drawn, therefore, from the whole range of vocabulary, from colloquial forms occurring in modern speech to learned Sanskrit loanwords occurring only in literary texts. Any word which occurs in a standard dictionary is a word which the student may have to read and illustrates the use of the characters of the script.

This study of the Devanagari script owes its inspiration to the suggestion and encouragement of Professor Firth, to whom my thanks are first due. But a work of this nature could not have been accomplished without reference to experts in the languages discussed, and I am greatly indebted to my colleagues of both the Department of India, Pakistan and Ceylon, and the Department of Phonetics and Linguistics, of the School, for their co-operation and guidance. I am especially indebted to Miss G. M. Summers, formerly Lecturer in Bengali in this School, for her collaboration in the Bengali section, without which the study of the Bengali script could not have been included in this work. The two scribes who have written the script portions of the book, Miss W. Westover and Mr. P. Pritchard, must also be given recognition for their careful and accurate work.

Finally I wish to express my appreciation of the great generosity of the School of Oriental and African Studies for their subvention towards the publication of this book; and of the help and advice given by the Oxford University Press on all matters concerning its production.

H. M. L.

# CONTENTS

	page
Foreword	v
Preface	vii
Introduction: The Devanagari Script	1
Notation	2
Calligraphy	5
SANSKRIT SECTION	
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	11
Sanskrit syllabary in roman notation	12
Sanskrit phonetic terms	13
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	15
1. Consonant Characters	15
i. Characters of the vergliya group	16
ii. Characters of the antehatthe group	18
iii. Characters of the uugmen group, and Vedic [e]	19
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	21
i. Vowel characters	21
ii. Vowel signs	23
3. Modifiers	26
i. anusvareh	26
ii. visergeh	30
4. The Complete Syllabary	31
5. Numerals	32
6. Punctuation	32
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	33
1. Construction of Conjunct Characters	33
2. Contexts of Conjunct Characters	35
3. Classification of Conjunct Characters	37
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	38
Class 2. Two vergliya characters joined	39
Class 3. Characters joined with antehatthe characters	43
i. with following ya	43
ii. with following va	44
iii. with preceding or following ra	45
iv. with preceding or following la and [e]	47
Class 4. vergliya characters joined with preceding or following uugmen characters	48
i. with [e], [e] and sa	48
ii. with ha	50
Transcription of reading examples	51



## HINDI SECTION

Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	page
Hindi syllabary in roman notation	57
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	61
1. Consonant Characters	61
Realisation of əkar consonant characters	62
i. Characters of the vɛrgiɪy group	63
ii. Characters of the əntɛsth group	64
iii. Characters of the uɯsm group	65
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	67
i. Vowel Characters	67
ii. Vowel Signs	67
Realisation of characters in special contexts	69
3. Modifiers	70
i. ənuɯvar and cəndr-bindu	70
ii. viɛrg	73
4. The Complete Syllabary	73
5. Numerals	74
6. Punctuation	74
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	75
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Hindi	75
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Hindi	76
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	76
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	77
Class 2. Two vɛrgiɪy characters joined	78
Class 3. Characters joined with əntɛsth characters	79
i. with following ye	79
ii. with following ve	80
iii. with preceding or following re	80
iv. with preceding or following le	81
Class 4. vɛrgiɪy characters joined with preceding or following uɯsm characters	82
i. with ʃe, ʒe and se	82
ii. with he	83
Hindi prose passage	84
Transcription of reading examples	85

MARATHI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	91
Marathi syllabary in roman notation	92
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	94
1. Consonant Characters	95
Realisation of əkar consonant characters	96
i. Characters of the vergiyy group	96
ii. Characters of the əntəsth group	99
iii. Characters of the uṣm group, and ʃə	100
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	102
i. Vowel Characters	102
ii. Vowel Signs	103
Modern forms of Marathi vowel characters	103
Realisation of characters in special contexts	105
Realisation of characters of the cə-verg	106
3. Modifiers	108
i. ənusvar	108
ii. visərg	111
4. The Complete Syllabary	112
5. Numerals	112
6. Punctuation	112
Rules of Marathi Orthography	113
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	118
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Marathi	118
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Marathi	119
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	119
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	120
Class 2. Two vergiyy characters joined	121
Class 3. Characters joined with əntəsth characters	122
i. with following yə	122
ii. with following və	123
iii. with preceding or following rə	124
iv. with preceding or following lə	126
Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uṣm characters	127
i. with ʃə, ʒə and sə	127
ii. with hə	128
Marathi prose passage	129
Transcription of reading examples	130

## GUJARATI SECTION

Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	page 135
Gujarati syllabary in roman notation	136
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	138
1. Consonant Characters	138
Realisation of akar consonant characters	139
i. Characters of the verglii group	140
ii. Characters of the antesth group	142
iii. Characters of the uugm group, and ]e	143
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	144
i. Vowel Characters	144
ii. Vowel Signs	145
Realisation of vowels 'e' and 'o'	146
Realisation of characters in special contexts	148
Realisation of 'de' and 'qhe'	150
Orthography of 'i' and 'u'	150
3. Modifiers	152
i. anusvar	152
ii. viserg	154
4. The Complete Syllabary	155
5. Numerals	156
6. Punctuation	156
Rules of Gujarati Orthography	156
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	157
1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati	157
2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati	158
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	159
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	159
Class 2. Two verglii characters joined	160
Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters	161
i. with following ye	161
ii. with following ve	162
iii. with preceding or following re	162
iv. with preceding or following le	164
Class 4. verglii characters joined with preceding or following uugm characters	165
i. with ]e, ]e and se	165
ii. with he	166
Gujarati prose passage	167
Transcription of reading examples	168

## BENGALI SECTION

	page
Chapter 1. Arrangement of the Syllabary	173
Notation	174
Bengali syllabary in roman notation	175
Calligraphy	177
Chapter 2. Characters of the Syllabary	179
1. Consonant Characters	
i. Characters of the vergiiya group	181
Realisation of akar consonant characters	183
ii. Characters of the entesthe group	186
iii. Characters of the uugma group	188
Realisation of akar consonant characters in verbal forms	190
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs	192
i. Vowel Characters	192
ii. Vowel Signs	194
Realisation of consonant and vowel characters in special contexts	195
a. Realisation of akar consonant characters	195
b. Realisation of vowel characters in special contexts	197
Realisation of entesthe ya	199
3. Modifiers	204
i. candra-bindu and anusvara	204
ii. viserge	206
4. The Complete Syllabary	206
5. Numerals	207
6. Punctuation	207
Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters	208
1. Construction of Conjunct Characters	208
2. Contexts and Realisation of Conjunct Characters	209
3. Classes of Conjunct Characters	211
Class 1. Two similar characters joined	211
Class 2. Two vergiiya characters joined	212
Class 3. Characters joined with entesthe characters	214
i. with following ye	214
ii. with following ve	216
iii. with preceding or following re	218
iv. with preceding or following le	220
Class 4. vergiiya characters joined with preceding or following uugma characters	221
i. with ja, ge and sa	221
ii. with he	223
Bengali prose passage	225
Transcription of Reading Examples	226

1877  
The following is a list of the  
names of the persons who  
were present at the  
meeting of the  
Board of Directors  
of the  
City of New York  
on the 1st day of  
January, 1877.

1877  
The following is a list of the  
names of the persons who  
were present at the  
meeting of the  
Board of Directors  
of the  
City of New York  
on the 1st day of  
January, 1877.

1877  
The following is a list of the  
names of the persons who  
were present at the  
meeting of the  
Board of Directors  
of the  
City of New York  
on the 1st day of  
January, 1877.



## INTRODUCTION

### The Devanagari Script

The script traditionally referred to as the Devanagari Script is used in writing Sanskrit and, of the modern languages of northern India, Hindi, Marathi and Nepali. The script used in writing Gujarati is a slightly modified form of the Devanagari script, and the scripts used in writing Bengali and Panjabi are related to the Devanagari script, though this relation is apparent in only some of the characters. The writing system, based on the character representing the syllable, is the same for all these languages. However, in order to use this system for writing the modern languages, which have each developed in their own particular way from the original Sanskrit, a number of conventions have become necessary in reading from the script, conventions which vary with the special features of each language. The realisation of the characters as they are used for writing Hindi, Bengali, Marathi and Gujarati, and the conventions which have become established in each language, are described in the various sections of this work. Though the Bengali script differs considerably from the Devanagari script in the form of most of the characters, the study of it is included in this work because the writing system is the same as the Sanskrit writing system, and the conventions by which

this system is adapted for writing Bengali have much in common with the conventions used in the other modern languages. An examination of these conventions makes possible an interesting comparison both between the writing of these four languages and that of Sanskrit, and between the writing of the modern languages themselves.

The origin of the name 'Devanagari' is obscure. The shorter form of the name is 'Nagari'(nagerii), which has been variously interpreted. It is thought by some to be the name given to the writing of 'the people of the city'(nagerem, 'a city'); by others it is said to derive its name from the Nagar Brahmins of Gujarat.

### Notation

The system of roman notation used in this text for transcribing the Devanagari characters is the All-India Roman Notation<sup>1</sup>. Three minor modifications have been introduced in this text in order to adapt the notation for transcribing both Sanskrit and the modern languages.

These modifications are :-

- i. The use of the vowels i ('short' i) and ii ('long' ii) instead of the vowels y and i ; and of the vowels u ('short' u) and uu ('long' uu) for the vowels w and u .
- ii. The use of the letter ŋ instead of η for representing the mark of nasalisation known as the anusvar.
- iii. The placing of a micron above the letter y in the diphthong ey , and above the letter v in the diphthong ev , thus: eȳ , eṽ .

---

1. See Preface.

This mark distinguishes the transcription of the diphthongs from the transcription of combinations of characters which are realised in certain contexts as ə-y and ə-v, not distinguishable in ordinary speech, in the modern languages, from the diphthongs.

Besides these modifications, it is necessary to make certain additions to the notation in order to represent characters used in writing the modern languages but not used in Sanskrit, and certain modified characters used in Hindi and Bengali. The complete notation used in the Sanskrit syllabary is this:

Vowels:    ə    a    i    ii    u    uu    e    əỵ    o    əṿ  
             and    r    rr            l    ll , for the syllabic consonants.

Modifiers<sup>1</sup>:    ŋ (representing the anusvara) and  
                   h (representing the visarga)

Consonants:    k    kh    g    gh    ŋ  
                   c    ch    j    jh    ɲ  
                   t̪    t̪h    d̪    d̪h    ɳ  
                   t    th    d    dh    n  
                   p    ph    b    bh    m  
                   y    r    l    v ;    ʃ    ʂ    s    h  
                   ] , used in transcribing Vedic Sanskrit

The additional letters used in the syllabaries of the modern languages are these:

ɽ and ɽh for transcribing the modified forms of the characters representing d̪ and d̪h , in Hindi and Bengali, and for

---

1. For the use of this term, see Sanskrit section, Chapter 1.

indicating the intervocallic realisation, in certain words, of the Gujarati character representing  $q$  .

$q$  ,  $x$  ,  $y$  ,  $z$  and  $f$  , for transcribing certain modified Devanagari characters used in Hindi in writing Persian and Arabic loanwords.  $ts$  ,  $z$  and  $zh$  , for transcribing characters of the 'palatal' class in Marathi, when they are realised with alveolar articulation.

In modern spoken Gujarati and modern spoken Bengali, certain vowel sounds occur which are not separately represented in the script. For indicating the contexts in which such vowel sounds occur, the three symbols  $e$  ,  $o$  and  $\ae$  are used.

The sign of nasalisation,  $\sim$  , is used in transcribing the modifier representing nasalisation<sup>1</sup> when it is realised, in the modern languages, as the nasalisation of a vowel and not as a nasal consonant.

This roman notation is used for writing all the Sanskrit grammatical terms referring to the syllabaries of Sanskrit and of the modern languages, the classification of the characters and the phonetic description of their realisation. The names of the languages, the scripts, and grammatical terms, such as 'sandhi'(sandhi), which are in regular use in English, are written in their conventional English form.

The Sanskrit syllabary, as arranged by the Sanskrit grammarians, is given in the roman notation in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>, and serves as a standard with which the syllabaries of the modern languages can be compared.

---

1. See Sanskrit Section, Chapter 2, 3.1.a. anusvare.

2. *ibid.*, Chapter 1.



Calligraphy

The writing of the Devanagari characters should be practised at first with a reed or bamboo pen. Such pens are still in use in many parts of India, and in many schools Indian children are taught first to write on a large scale with a broadly cut bamboo pen. Writing in this way will train the eye to recognise easily details of difference and will train the hand to write a standard form of the characters with the broad and thin strokes in the right place and proportion. These pens are cut in the same way as a quill pen, except that the point is cut to slant in the opposite direction from that of the quill used for English writing with the tilted axis. The English pen, when cut for the tilted axis, looks like this from the back:



writing thus:



The pen cut for the Devanagari script looks like this from the back:



writing thus:



The pen should be held in such a way that the thin line, made by the cut edge, falls from left to right at an angle of 45 degrees from a line drawn horizontally across the page. The broad stroke then forms a right-angle with the thin stroke and crosses the horizontal line of the page at an angle of 45 degrees. Care must be taken not to change the angle of the pen during the writing of curved or rounded strokes, as this will change the shape and balance of the character.

Some of the typical strokes of the script should be practised until good control of the pen, held at the right angle, is established before the characters themselves are written. For example:





The use of the broad pen should be continued until a good style of handwriting is formed; the introduction of writing with an ordinary pen, and without sufficient attention to the details of line and form, often interferes with the formation of a good hand.

In the illustrations given below, which may be used as writing exercises, the characters are grouped so as to show different combinations of strokes, and to draw attention to similarities and to small but important differences. It will be seen that some of the characters have an upright stroke, others are curved or rounded, without an upright stroke; but all have the head-stroke, though it is not always written right across the top of the character. The alignment of the characters is made by this head-stroke, that is, by the top of the character, though there is an invisible alignment also by the bottom of the character. For this reason, it is well to practice writing at first between two lines; if one line is used, the characters should be written from the line downwards, not on the line.

The general method of writing the characters is this: first, the characteristic part of the character, usually on the left side of the upright stroke; then the upright stroke, if there is one; and finally the head-stroke. The head-stroke binds the whole character together, as will be seen when vowel signs and other marks are added. The general direction of making the strokes is from the top downwards, and from left to right. But the order of the strokes in some characters, and their direction, differ from this general rule, and where this is so, the calligraphy of particular characters is illustrated when these are introduced in the chapters which follow.

Examples of Devanagari characters, showing the order in which the strokes are written:

व-० ७ व व । ब-५ ५ ब । क-५ क क  
 ग-५ ग । न-५ न । म-५ म । भ-५ भ  
 र-५ र । स-५ स । ख-५ ख ख  
 ह-५ ह <sup>or</sup> ड ह ह । ई-५ ई ई

Examples of similarity and difference between characters:

घ द्य ध      ट ठ ढ ढ ह ड इ

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO  
LIBRARY  
1100 EAST 58TH STREET  
CHICAGO, ILL. 60637

5732253 1127



## SANSKRIT SECTION





# CHAPTER 1

## ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

When the characters of the Devanagari Script, देवनागरी , are arranged in the traditional order, they constitute a series of syllables which may be regarded as the basis of the Sanskrit phonological system. Each character represents a syllable, and is called अक्षरम् (akṣarəm). The series of characters in the syllabary is called

वर्णमाला (varṇamāla), and consists of:-

Fourteen vowel characters,

Two modifiers and

Thirtythree consonant characters.

The syllabary used in writing Vedic Sanskrit includes one more consonant character.

In reading aloud from the script, a vowel character is realised as a syllable consisting of a vowel, स्वरः (svaraḥ), and a consonant character is realised as a syllable consisting of an initial consonant, व्यञ्जनम् (vyañjanam) followed by the vowel ə . This vowel, when realised with a consonant, is generally referred to in English textbooks as the 'inherent' vowel. The term 'modifier' is used here to refer to the two signs which indicate some modification in the realisation of the character with which they are written. These two signs are usually referred to individually, as the 'anusvaraḥ' and the 'visargaḥ', as there is no Sanskrit term which is used to refer to them together.

Each character is referred to, for instance, in spelling, as the syllable which it represents, and the particle कार (karə); for example, आकार (akare), इकार (ikare), ककार (kəkarə), तकार (takare).

The roman syllabary given below corresponds in arrangement and classification with the Devanagari syllabary. As the consonant characters are discussed first in this work, the table of consonant syllables is placed first in this syllabary.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Cacum- inal	4 Dental	5 Labial
P l o s i v e s	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	tə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	də	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	qhə	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		ŋə	ɲə	ɳə	nə	mə
Semi-vowels				yə	rə	lə	və
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS, associated with consonant-classes			e a	i ii e əy	r rr	.l ll	u uu o əv
MODIFIERS			Nasal -ŋ	Aspirated -h			

The character represented by *va* in the roman table is usually realised with labio-dental articulation in reading from a Sanskrit text. The retroflex lateral consonant [ɭ] occurs only in Vedic Sanskrit. The vowel 'syllabic l' does not occur in Sanskrit, but the character representing it is traditionally included in the script syllabary.

The main feature of the syllabary is the arrangement of the consonant characters in groups according to the position and the manner of articulation of the sounds which they represent. The following Sanskrit phonetic terms are used by grammarians in the description of the characters as they are classified in the syllabary:

i. The consonant characters are placed in three groups: characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant, that is, a consonant articulated with 'contact', स्पर्शः (*sparśah*, 'touch'); characters representing syllables with an initial semi-vowel, that is, 'neither a consonant nor a vowel', अन्तरस्थ (*antastha*, 'standing between'); and characters representing syllables with an initial fricative consonant, ऊष्मन् (*uṣman*, 'heat').

ii. The five positions of articulation are: कण्ठ्य (*kaṇṭhya*, 'velar') or जिह्वमूलीय (*jihvamūliya*, 'root of the tongue'); तालव्य (*talavya*, 'palatal'); मूर्धन्य (*mūrdhanya*, 'caecuminal'¹); दन्त्य (*dantya*, 'dental') and ओष्ठ्य (*oṣṭhya*, 'labial'). Labio-dental articulation is described as दन्तीष्ठ्य (*dantīṣṭhya*).

---

1. This term refers to the area of the roof of the mouth with which contact is made by the tongue. Consonants of this class are also described as 'cerebral'. As the retroflexion of the tongue is an important feature in the pronunciation of consonants of this class in the modern languages, the class is described as 'retroflex' in the roman tables of those languages. Cf. Hindi, p.59.

111. The manner of production of the sounds by which the characters are realised is described in the following terms, and in each class of plosive consonants the characters are arranged in this order:

voiceless, unaspirated	- अघोष (əghoṣa <sup>1</sup> ), अल्पप्राण (alpepraṇa <sup>2</sup> )
voiceless, aspirated	- अघोष (əghoṣa), महाप्राण (mahapraṇa <sup>3</sup> )
voiced, unaspirated	- घोषवत् (ghoṣavāt <sup>4</sup> ), अल्पप्राण (alpepraṇa)
voiced, aspirated	- घोषवत् (ghoṣavāt), महाप्राण (mahapraṇa)
nasal	- अनुनासिक (anunasika <sup>5</sup> ),

- 
1. 'without sound', or 'voiceless'.
  2. 'with little breath', or 'unaspirated'.
  3. 'with big breath', or 'aspirated'.
  4. 'with sound' or 'voiced'.
  5. 'nasal'.



## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the script are described in this chapter in the same order as that in which the syllables are placed in the roman syllabary: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers.

The general style of the characters varies from period to period and from region to region. In the older editions of Sanskrit works some characters are found that are now supplanted by newer and more widely used forms; and there is sometimes a marked difference in the style used in printing books in Bombay, Calcutta and other parts of India. The most commonly used of the alternative forms of some of the characters are given below, among the characters of each group. The calligraphy of any characters which are not written according to the general order of strokes given in the Introduction is illustrated when the characters are introduced.

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters of the syllabary represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by the vowel *e*. Consonant characters realised with the vowel *e* are described as **अकार** (*ekare*). If a character is to be realised as the consonant element only of the syllable, this is shown by writing the mark known as **विरामः** (*virameh*) at the foot of the character. The writing of this mark with a character is illustrated below, after the first table.



Characters written with the viramēh are described as हलन्त (halanta), 'ending in a consonant'.

1. Characters of the vergiye group (वर्गीय).

The twentyfive characters of this group are arranged, as in the roman table given above, in five classes, वर्गः (vergeh), representing the five positions of 'contact', स्पर्शः (sperśeh), used in the articulation of the plosive consonants. Each class consists of five characters, arranged in order according to the manner of production of the consonant of the syllable which they represent.

क-वर्गः  
ke-vergeh

क  
ke

ख  
khe

ग  
ge

घ  
ghe

ङ  
ṅe

च-वर्गः  
ce-vergeh

च  
ce

छ  
che

ज  
je

झ  
jhe

ञ  
ṇe

ट-वर्गः  
ṭe-vergeh

ट  
ṭe

ठ  
ṭhe

ड  
ḍe

ढ  
ḍhe

ण  
ṇe

त-वर्गः  
te-vergeh

त  
te

थ  
the

द  
de

ध  
dhe

न  
ne

प-वर्गः  
pe-vergeh

प  
pe

फ  
phe

ब  
be

भ  
bhe

म  
me

The Bombay form of the character for jhe is झ , and the forms क and ङ are found in older books printed in Calcutta. The Bombay

form of the character for *ṇa* is ण . The Bombay forms of these characters are used in Hindi writing, but the Hindi forms are not used in Marathi writing, or in Sanskrit books printed in Bombay.

### Calligraphy.

All the characters in the above table are written in the way described in the introductory notes on calligraphy, except the following three characters:

ja	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ
jhe	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ
te	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ

The writing of the virameh to indicate the realisation of a consonant character as a consonant without the vowel *e* is illustrated by these characters:

क	च	ट	त	प
k-	c-	t-	t-	p-

When writing words, which may be of one or more characters, each character is written and completed with the head-stroke before the next character is written. In the reading examples which are given below, words which are usually written with the modifier known as विसर्गः (visergeh)<sup>2</sup> are written in the form in which they occur in various contexts without this modifier. The visergeh is written with reading examples after the modifiers have been discussed. Verbal roots, in the form in which they are given in grammars and dictionaries, are included in the examples in order to illustrate the writing of characters with the virameh.

1. The first stroke in these characters is written from right to left.  
2. See below, under 3. Modifiers, ii.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

## 1. One character words

द ध त फ म प न च ड ग  
क भ ज ब य छ थ ख झ ञ

## 2. Two character words

भट पद धन कड मठ फण घन खच् दध् दम  
छद् भग जड फट पथ बत छग पठ् घट गण

## 3. Three character words

गमक जगत् चणक मथन घटक पठक दमथ  
धटक कपट भजक गणक कथम् खजक पदक

## 4. Four and five character words

छदनम् पणनम् नटनम् कथनम् भणनम् जनपद  
गमनम् पठनम् धनमद भणभणम् झणझणम्

11. Characters of the antehstha<sup>2</sup> group ( अन्तःस्थ )

य र ल व

Bombay form

ल

ye

re

le

ve

le

## Calligraphy

le : Hindi form ८<sup>3</sup> ८ ल ल Bombay form ८<sup>3</sup> ल ल ल

These four characters are associated with four of the vergeh, as indicated in the roman syllabary, and with four of the vowels, thus:

य , ye, associated with the ce-vergeh, and the vowels i and ii  
र , re, associated with the te-vergeh, and the syllabic r and rr<sup>4</sup>  
ल , le, associated with the te-vergeh, and the syllabic l and ll<sup>4</sup>  
व , ve, associated with the pe-vergeh, and the vowels u and uu

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. 'standing between.' 3. This stroke is written from right to left.

4. See below, under 2. Vowel Characters.

These characters are all described as *elpepran̐* and *ghosavat*.

व , ve , though associated with the labial class, is realised with labio-dental articulation, and described as *दन्तौष्ठ्य* (*dantoṣṭhye*).

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words

व य र ल ब थ ख त

2. Two character words

लव जल खर वद भर बल घर रण वठ्  
लम् यव धर लय झर रट् रण फल् रथ

3. Three character words

तरल लवण भयम् धवल जठर चरण डमर  
नखर लगड चपल भवत् नयन वचर लटभ

4. Words of four or more characters

यमवत् वयनम् गरलम् पदकमल कपटवचनम्

iii. Characters of the *uṣmen*<sup>2</sup> group (ऊष्मन्)

श ष स and ह  
ʃə ʃə sə he

Calligraphy

ʃə : Hindi form श श श Bombay form श श श श  
he : i. ह ह or ii. ह ह

An older form of श is श , a form still used in joining this character to certain other characters. This form is illustrated later under Conjunct Characters<sup>3</sup>.

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. 'heat'

3. See Chapter 3.



The first three characters of this group represent syllables consisting of a fricative consonant with the vowel *a*, and are described as *aghosa* and *mahapraṇa*. The fourth character is realised as an aspirate followed by the vowel *a*, and is described as *ghoṣavet* and *mahapraṇa*. The *uṣman* characters are associated with the classes thus: श , *ja*, with the *ca-vergeḥ*; ष , *ṣa*, with the *[e-vergeḥ*; स , *sa*, with the *te-vergeḥ*; and ह , *ha*, with the *ke-vergeḥ*.

The character ह is the last consonant character in the syllabary used in writing classical Sanskrit. In writing Vedic Sanskrit one more character is used, ऌ , *[a*, realised as a retroflex lateral consonant followed by the vowel *a*.

Calligraphy of ऌ : 

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words

ष ह स श ष ड र ख

2. Two character words

शर सह षट् वश हस् भूष रस वष् शव  
सत् शठ स्वश कष शस् हय हर क्षष भष

3. Three character words

सरल कलश जहत् वयस् शपथ समय बहल शलभ  
यशस् शरट सफल सरस हरक परश रमस हतक

4. Four, five and six character words

दशरथ शकटम् सवयस् कलहम् शसनम् शतशस्  
जलचरम् नवदशकम् सहगमनम् कमलवदन दशशतम्

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. Vowel Characters, with corresponding Vowel Signs.

A vowel which constitutes a syllable is written with a vowel character; a vowel which is part of a syllable with an initial consonant is written with a vowel sign added to a consonant character.

1. Vowel Characters.

There are fourteen vowel characters in the *varṇamala*:

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū
		ऋ	ॠ	ऌ	ॡ
		r	rr	l	ll
		ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
		e	ē	o	ō

The character अ, and the other characters based on the same form, आ, ओ and औ, and the characters ऋ, ॠ, ऌ and ॡ, have these alternative forms:

अ	आ	ओ	औ	ऋ	ॠ	ऌ	ॡ
a	ā	o	ō	r	rr	l	ll

Both forms of these vowel characters are used in Hindi writing; only the Bombay forms are used in Marathi writing. An older form of ओ, o, is ओ<sup>1</sup>. The order of writing the strokes in vowel characters is illustrated by these examples:

a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	r	rr	l	ll
ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ
ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ
ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ
ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ	ॐ

1. See below, under 3. Modifiers, 1. note c.

The vowel characters are referred to as अकार , a-karə, आकार , a-karə, इकार i-karə, and so on. They are related to the five positions of articulation as shown in the table of the roman syllabary. The vowel ll does not occur in Sanskrit words, but the character is traditionally included in the syllabary for the sake of symmetry.

The first ten vowel characters represent five pairs of 'simple' vowels, each pair consisting of a character realised as a 'short' vowel, ह्रस्व , (hrəsvə) and a character realised as a 'long' vowel, दीर्घ , (diirghə). The remaining four characters represent vowels which are described as 'compound' or 'conjunct', संयुक्त , (samyukta<sup>1</sup>). In the system of modification and combination of vowels known as 'sandhi', सन्धि: , (səndhih), as in the formation of compound words, derived words, and the joining of final and initial vowels in consecutive words in a phrase or sentence, the vowels are grouped thus:

Simple vowels    ə        a        i        ii        u        uu        r        rr        l

गुण: (guṇəh)    ə        a                e                o                ər                əl

वृद्धि: (vrddhih)    a                əy̐                əv̐                ar                al

Examples <sup>2</sup> :	नगरम्	nagerəṃ	--	नागरिक	nagerike
	दिव	dive	देव	deve	दैव्य
	भूति	bhuuti	--	भौतिक	bheṽtike
	कृ	kr	कर्	kər	कार्य
	कृप्	kḷp	कल्पना	kəlpəna	काल्पनिक
					kalpenike

1. See above, Ch.1., and below, 3.1. for the modifier represented by ṃ.

2. See below, ii, for the vowel signs used in these examples.



Reading examples of words with vowel characters:<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words

ए इ उ अ ऋ ई ऊ ओ ऐ ल आ औ ऋ

2. Words of more than one character

अथ इष् उत् एक इन ओत् अद् ऐरा ऋध्  
ऊह् एध ईश उद्य औम् ऋण ऊढ इह उष्  
अद् अल् औम् ओस् ऋच् ऐण उदङ् ऋणम्  
ईषत् ऊहनम् ऋषभ औषधम् ऐषमस् उपकरणम्

ii. Vowel Signs

Each of the vowel characters, except अ , ए , has a corresponding vowel sign which may be added to a consonant character to represent a syllable consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a - əv̄ . As the vowel ए is realised with every consonant character unless it is either marked with the viraməḥ or has one of the vowel signs added to it, there is no sign for this vowel.

The vowel signs, added to the consonant character क , are:

क	का	कि	की	कु	कू
(kə)	ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu
	कृ	कृ	कृ	कृ	
	kr	krr	kl	kl1 <sup>2</sup>	
	के	कै	को	कौ	
	ke	kəȳ	ko	kəv̄	

1. Transcription of examples is given on p.51.

2. See note on the vowel 11 under Vowel Characters, above.



## Calligraphy

The order of writing the strokes when a vowel sign is added to a consonant character is illustrated in the following examples:

ka	क	का	का	ku	क	कु	कु
ki	।	।क	कि	कि	ki।	क	का
dhi	।	।ध	धि	धि	bhi	।	।भ
ke	क	के	के	ko	क	का	को

When the vowel signs are added to consonant characters which have an upright stroke, the superscribed signs are placed above the upright stroke, and the subscribed signs are written at the foot of that stroke. When vowel signs are subscribed to rounded characters, they are written below the mid-point of the lowest curve, thus:

छु	दू	दु	दू	दु	हु
chu	du	du	du	du	hu

Special forms

रु	रू	रु	रु	रु
ru	ru	ru	ru	ru

An older form of शु is शु<sup>1</sup>, and of हु is हु

The vowel sign of ऋ is not written with र्. The character representing र् with ऋ is written with the superscribed stroke used to represent र् when it is to be realised before another consonant character without an intervening vowel. This stroke is placed over the vowel character ऋ, as in निर्वृति, nirrti<sup>2</sup>.

Mark of 'separation'.

When an initial अ or आ occurs after certain final vowels in the preceding word, the mark S, known as अवग्रहः (avagraheh)<sup>3</sup> is

1. See Ch.2,1.iii. 2. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.a. 3. 'separation'.

written after the vowel in which the final and initial vowels are coalesced, to indicate the presence of two words in the piece. The mark is written once when the initial vowel of the second word is अ, and twice when the initial vowel is आ, as in these examples:

यो अयम् योऽयम् ते अपि तेऽपि सदा आत्मन् सदाऽऽत्मन्  
yo - ayam yo-yam te - api te-pi sada - atman sada--tman<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words

नी भू गै सु दा जि गौ पै मे दू  
कृ छि नौ है भी धृ शी दृ हि ह

2. Two character words

दूर भीत राम चोर तिङ् दोष शृत धृत रूढ  
गैर कृश् पौल कृप् दृढ पुर फेण मौल कृत्  
पितृ येरु दुषि भीति हृदि गुरु वृथा शिशु सेतु  
ओतु ईति एती ऋतु इति ऊरु ऋषि एणी ईळे

3. Three character words

भूषित विशेष उपाय वैभव पितृन् पौरुष रुचिर भौमिक  
कुमारी भटिति ठालिनी रूपित औषधि कैकेयी झिरिका  
विधातृ ऐहिक ठालिन् सुरभि खडिका हेळते

4. Four, five and six character words

एकाकिन् हृषिकेश इतिहास कौशलेय विष्चिका पौराणिक  
देवनागरी अनुनासिक औपनिषद उपजीविका औपदेशिक  
उपनिवेशिक औपनायनिक कोऽपि ऋतेऽपि यशोऽपयश

1. त्म, tme, the characters त् and म combined. See Chapter 3, Class 2. iii. 2. Transcription of examples is given on p. 51.

### 3. Modifiers

The two modifiers, known as अनुस्वारः (anusvareh) and विसर्गः (visergeh), are signs which may be added to a character to indicate a modification in the realisation of the character. They are placed in the syllabary after the vowel characters, and, as they cannot be written alone, they are written with the character अ. They may, however, be written with any character.

#### 1. anusvareh, अनुस्वारः 1

This modifier is written as a dot above the character of which it modifies the realisation, thus:

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	ऊं	एं	ऐं	ओं	औं
am̐	aṃ	iṃ	iīṃ	uṃ	uūṃ	eṃ	ēṃ	oṃ	ōṃ
कं	कां	किं	कीं	कुं	कूं	कें	कैं	कों	कौं
kaṃ	kaṃ	kiṃ	kiīṃ	kuṃ	kuūṃ	keṃ	keṃ	koṃ	keṃ

#### Calligraphy

The anusvareh is generally added to the character after the vowel sign has been written and before the headstroke is written to complete the character. It is placed above the middle of the character, or over the last upright stroke if there is one, and to the right side of any superscribed vowel sign, for example;

kaṃ	क	कं	कं	daṃ	द	दं	दं	haṃ	ह	हं	हं
gaṃ	ग	गां	गां	giṃ	ग	गिं	गिं	geṃ	गे	गें	गें
dhim̐	ध	धिं	धिं	bhim̐	भ	भिं	भिं	rom̐	र	रों	रों



The anusvareh is written with a character in various contexts, and is realised in various ways according to the context.

a. When a word of which the final character represents the formative particle म् occurs in any position except at the end of a line of verse or a sentence, the character म् is omitted before an initial consonant character of a following word and the formative particle is represented by the anusvareh. This formative particle is usually written as म् only at the end of a line or a sentence. For example:

येतां विभूतिं योगं च--	येताम्	विभूतिम्	योगम्
yetam vibhuutim yogam ca...	yetam	vibhuutim	yogam

b. The anusvareh may be written with an initial or medial character followed by a vargliya character. In this context it is realised as the nasal consonant of the class to which the following character belongs. Examples:

ॠ - ॠ	अंक aṅka (aṅka)	पुंख puṅkha (puṅkha)	लिंग liṅga (liṅga)
ॠ - ण	पंच paṅca (paṅca)	वांछ vaṅch (vaṅch)	सिंज siṅj (siṅj)
ॠ - ण	कुंठ kuṅṭha (kuṅṭha)	अंठ aṅṭha (aṅṭha)	पिंड piṇḍa (piṇḍa)
ॠ - न	शान्ति śaṅti (śaṅti)	इंदु iṅdu (iṅdu)	बंधु baṅdhu (baṅdhu)
ॠ - म	कंप kaṁpa (kaṁpa)	अंबु aṁbu (aṁbu)	कुंभ kuṁbha (kuṁbha)

Another, more usual, method of representing a homorganic nasal is that of combining the appropriate nasal consonant character with



the vergiye character that follows it, that is, ह् with characters of the ka-vergeh, ज् with characters of the ca-vergeh, and so on. This method is used also when the formative particle म् occurs before an initial vergiye character in a sentence, where consecutive words are joined in sandhi. The calligraphy of such combined characters is illustrated later<sup>1</sup>. Formative particles, such as अन्ति , -anti, and अन्ते , -ente, are usually written by this method and not with the anusvarah.

The anusvarah is sometimes written to represent -n or -m , in compounds formed from the prefix सम्, sam-, and words beginning with न or म ; e.g. संनत sannate, and संमति sammati.

c. When the anusvarah is written with a character preceding a character of the antehsthe or the uugmen group, the realisation of it varies according to the position of articulation of the character which follows it, and also with the custom of speakers in different parts of India. The anusvarah preceding an antehsthe character is realised as follows:

Before य , ye , as ण , m , n or ङ ; e.g.

संयोग sanyoga, samyoga, senyoge or seṅgyoge

Before र , re , as ण , m , n or ण् ; e.g.

संराग sanrage, samrage, senrage or seṅrage

Before ल , le , as ण , m , n or ण् ; e.g.

संलय sanleye, samleye, senleye or seṅleye

Before व , ve , as ण , m , or ण् ; e.g.

संवाद sanvade, samvade or seṅvade

1. See Chapter 3. Conjunct Characters, Class 2.b.

The anusvareh preceding an uugmen character is realised thus:

Before श , je , as ŋ , m , n , or v; e.g.

अंश eŋʃə, əmʃə, ənʃə or əvʃə

Before ष , ʃə , as ŋ , m , nasalisation of the vowel, or v; e.g.

हवींषि həviɪŋʃi, həviɪmʃi, həvʃiʃi or həviɪvʃi

Before स , sə , as ŋ , m , n , or v; e.g.

संसार səŋsərə, səmsərə, sənsərə or səvsərə,  
or as nasalisation of the vowel, as in

हिंसा hiŋsa, himsa, hiṽsa or hīsa

पुंसि puŋsi, pumsi, pūsi

Before ह , hə , as ŋ , m , n , or v; e.g.

सिंह siŋhe, simhe, sinhe or siṽhe

or as nasalisation of the vowel in सैंह , sāyhe

The sign ॐ is sometimes written above a character preceding an entehathe or an uugmen character to indicate realisation by nasalising the vowel of the syllable instead of by a nasal consonant following the vowel. This sign is called अनुनासिक (enunasika<sup>1</sup>), and it is usually written, in preference to the anusvareh, in the 'sacred syllable' ॐ , (om)<sup>2</sup>

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

- a. किं मां सुखं हरिं मृतं तनुं अहं पवं ऋषीणां  
b. दिंब पांडु लेंगम् दुठि जुंम् भंभा किंचित् कौतेय  
c. संयमन संवत् मांस शयु संरूठ संलीन अंहति  
तामहं हदि संगतामनिशं भृशं रमयामि ।  
किं वनेऽनुसरामि तामिह किं वृथा विलपामि ॥<sup>4</sup>

1. 'nasal'. 2. See above, under 2.1. 3. For transcription of examples, see p.52. . The lines a, b and c correspond to the notes given above under 3.1. 4. Gītagovindakāvyaṃ, sarga 3,v.6.

## ii. visargeh , विसर्गः 1

The visargeh is written as two dots, placed vertically, after a character.

अः	आः	इः	ईः	उः	ऊः	ऋः	एः	ऐः	ओः	औः
əh	ah	ih	iɪh	uh	uuh	rrh	eh	əyh	oh	əvh
कः	काः	किः	कीः	कु	कू	कृ	के	कै	कोः	कौः
kəh	kah	kih	kiih	kuh	kuuh	krh	keh	kəyh	koh	kəvh

## Calligraphy

The visargeh is usually added to a character after every other stroke has been made, including the head-stroke.

e.g. क को को कोः

The realisation of the visargeh varies in different parts of India  
a. It may be realised as strong aspiration following the realisation of the character with which it is written, for example

देवः	मालाः	कविः	गुरुः	कवेः	गुणैः	भानौः	गौः
devəh	malah	kəvih	guruh	kəveh	guṇəyh	bhanoh	gəvh

It is realised in this way when it occurs medially, as in

दुःखम् , duhkəhm; or as the doubling of the following consonant, as in तपःसु , təpəhsu, tēpəssu.

b. It may be realised in final position as h following the vowel of the character with which it is written, and a very short repetition of the same vowel after h , as illustrated by this transcription of the examples given above:

devəh <sup>a</sup>	malah <sup>a</sup>	kəvih <sup>i</sup>	guruh <sup>u</sup>	kəveh <sup>e</sup>	guṇəyh <sup>i</sup>	bhanoh <sup>o</sup>	gəvh <sup>u</sup>
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	---------------------	---------------------	-------------------

1. 'emission of breath'



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

कः छः ठः भः ऐः ओः ऊः ऋः नौः षः  
 गुणाः धृतिः बाहुः नितेः नृपैः विदुः शृणिः पुरुषः  
 मनःसु हविःपु धेनुभिः विशेषतः अंशतः अतःकरणम्  
 समदुःखसुखः शुनःशेषः जगतोहिताः मतोऽधिकः तेजोऽशः  
 बहवोऽबुवेगाः योगमायासमावृतः गंगातरंगहिमशीकरशीतलानि  
 जयदेवपंडितकवेः । पंडितानां समाजेऽपंडिता मौनं भजेयुः ।

भूय एव महाबाहो शृणु मे परमं वचः ।<sup>2</sup>

सुखं दुःखं भवोऽभावो भयं चाभयमेव च ॥<sup>3</sup>

वहसि वपुषि विशदे वसनं जलदाभं हलहतिभीतिमिलितयमुनाभम् ।

केशव धृतहलधररूप जय जगदीश हरे ॥<sup>4</sup>

पाधविकापरिमलललित नवमालतिजातिसुगंधौ ।

मुनिमनसामपि मोहनकारिणी तरुणीकारिणबंधौ ॥<sup>5</sup>

4. The Complete Syllabary

The complete syllabary, arranged in the traditional order, is given on the following page. The characters are further arranged in a table in which the vowel characters, and the two modifiers added to the character अ, are placed in order at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akara form, each consonant character with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers.<sup>6</sup> These two tables together show the order in which the characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries. Characters with the anusvareh are, however, placed before characters without the anusvareh but followed by another consonant character.

1. For transcription, see p.52.

2. Bhagavadgītā, ch.10, v.1.a.

3. ibid., ch.10, v.4.b.

4. Gītagovindakāvyaṃ, sarga 1, v.8.

5. ibid., sarga 1.3, v.7.

6. Cf. the series of characters with

vowel signs given above under 2.ii.



अ आ इ ई उ ऊ  
 ऋ ॠ लृ लृ  
 ए ऐ ओ औ  
 अं अः  
 क ख ग घ ङ  
 च छ ज झ ञ  
 ट ठ ड ढ ण  
 त थ द ध न  
 प फ ब भ म  
 य र ल व  
 श ष स ह  
 ळ

### 5. The Devanagari Numerals

Hindi forms:	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	१०
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Bombay forms:	१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	१०
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

### 6. Punctuation

In prose writing, the end of a sentence is marked with a vertical stroke of the same height as the characters. In verse, the first line of a stanza or couplet is closed with one vertical stroke, and the complete stanza or couplet is closed with two vertical strokes and numbered as illustrated in the verse examples given at the end of the next chapter.

## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants realised without any intervening vowel. A character formed by combining other characters is called a conjunct character, संयुक्ताक्षरम् (samyuktakṣeram).

#### 1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Characters may be combined in various ways, according to the form of the characters to be joined.

1. The second character may be subscribed to the first:

क क	क्क	ङ क	ङ्क	ट ट	ट्ट	द व	द्व
k- kə	kke	ŋ- kə	ŋke	t- tə	tte	d- və	dve

- ii. If the first character has an upright stroke, this stroke may be omitted, and the first part of the first character is joined to the second character by the head-stroke, thus:

न द	न्द	ग ग	गग	त प	त्प	न म	न्म
n- də	nde	g- gə	gge	t- pə	tpe	n- mə	nme

The characters क्, ङ् and फ् are usually joined with following characters in the forms क्क, ङ्ग and फ्फ.

Some conjunct characters may be formed by either of these two methods, for example:

च च	च्च or च्च	ज ज	ज्ज or ज्ज
c- cə	cce	j- jə	jje

Some conjunct characters are formed by a combination of methods

i. and ii.; for example:

द ध	दु	द भ	दु
d- dhə	ddhə	d-bhə	dbhə

iii. If the first character is a rounded character, with no upright stroke, it is usually written in full, and the second character is joined with it in a modified form, for example:

ट य	ट्य	द य	द्य	ह य	ह्य	ह म	ह्म
t- yə	tyə	d- yə	dyə	h- yə	hyə	h- mē	hme

iv. Some characters are written in a special form when joined with other characters, for example:

श व	श्व	र थ	र्य	ग र	ग्र	श र	श्र
ś- və	śve	r- the	rthe	g- rə	gre	ś- rə	śre

The characters क्ष (Hindi form) and क्ख (Bombay form), representing k-ṣə, and the character ज्ञ, representing j-ṇə, have been included in the syllabic series from a very early date, though no conjunct characters are included in the syllabary. Calligraphically these three characters are not formed by joining two distinct characters, but they are considered in this work under the appropriate classes of conjunct characters because they represent syllables consisting of two consonants and the vowel ə.

If any characters are not modifiable, and therefore cannot be combined, by any of these methods, the realisation of them without an intervening vowel is indicated by writing the first character with the virameh, thus

ट क	टक्	इ द	इद	द ब्र	दब्र
t- kə	tke	q- də	qde	d- brə	dbre

Characters combined with other characters in this way do not form conjunct characters in calligraphy, but they are included in this chapter because they complete certain series in the classes of conjunct characters.

Three, four or five characters may be combined to form a conjunct character, for example:

त	म्	य	त्म्य	ब	ध्	व	बध्व	र	ष	ट	य	ष्ट्य							
t	-	m	-	yē	tmyē	b	-	dh	-	vē	bdhvē	r	-	ṣ	-	ṭ	-	yē	rṣṭyē

The general rules already given for the order of strokes in writing a character apply also to the conjunct characters. The vowel signs are added to the character before the headstroke is written.

Examples:

ktyu	क्	क्त्	क्त्य	क्त्यु	क्त्यु
stvi	।	।स्	।स्त्व	स्त्व	स्त्व
rjyam	ज	ज्या	ज्या	ज्या	ज्या

## 2. Contexts of Conjunct Characters.

Conjunct characters occur in the following contexts:

### i. In words, such as

इच्छा	अग्निः	क्षिप्रः	ब्रह्मन्	श्लोकः	स्त्री
iccha	agnih	kṣiprēh	brāhman	ṣlokaḥ	strii

### ii. In junctions arising from grammatical processes:

a. In words formed by the addition of suffixes to verbal roots,

such as

भज्-त	भक्त	गम्-य	गम्य	लभ्-त्वा	लब्ध्वा
bhəj-tē	bhəktē	gam-yē	gamye	lebh-tva	lēbhdhva



b. In derivatives of various kinds, such as

दिव	दैव्यम्	शूर	शौर्यम्
dive	daivyaṃ	śuura	śauryaṃ

c. In words formed by the addition of prefixes or suffixes to other words, as in

उत्तम	उत्तम	उत्-गमः	उद्गमः	अभि-आसः	अभ्यासः
ut-tame	uttama	ut-gamaḥ	udgamaḥ	abhi-aseḥ	abhyaseḥ
दुर-गुण	दुर्गुण	वि-आधिः	व्याधिः	वाच-मय	वाङ्-मय
dur-guṇa	durguṇa	vi-adhiḥ	vyadhiḥ	vac-maya	vaṅmaya

iii. In compound words, in which the final character of one part of the compound word, if it is a *halante* character, is joined with the initial character of the following part, as in

षट् - मासः	षण्मासः	ऋच्-वेदः	ऋग्वेदः
ṣaṭ - maseḥ	ṣaṇmaseḥ	rc - vedeh	rgvedeh
श्रीमत् भगवत् गीता		श्रीमद्भगवद्गीता	
śrīmat - bhagevet - gīta		śrīmedbhagevedgīta	

iv. In pieces consisting of two or more words, in which a conjunct character is written joining the final character of one word, if it is a *halante* character, with the initial character of the following word. For example:

श्रेयो हि ज्ञानमभ्यासाज्ज्ञानाद्ध्यानं विशिष्यते  
 śreyo hi jñānamabhyasajjñānaddhyanam viśiṣyate,

ध्यानात्कर्मफलत्यागस्त्यागाच्छान्तिरनन्तरम् ॥ १२ ॥  
 dhyanatkarmaphalatyagastyagacchāntirānāntarēma. 12.<sup>1</sup>

The process of joining characters illustrated in ii. to v. above is known as 'sandhi' of consonants<sup>1</sup>. The examples in ii.a. and ii.b. illustrate the process of 'internal' sandhi, and those in ii.c., iii. and iv. illustrate that of 'external' sandhi.

## 3. Classification of Conjunct Characters.

The conjunct characters are arranged in this work in classes according to the combination of consonants which occurs when the conjunct character is realised in reading. The conjunct characters, when arranged in this way, fall into four classes.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

Class 2. Two vergiye characters joined.

Class 3. Characters joined with antəhsthe characters in various combinations:

i. Characters joined with य

ii. Characters joined with व

iii. Characters joined with

a. preceding र् ; or b. following र

iv. Characters joined with

a. preceding ल्<sup>2</sup>; or b. following ल

Class 4. vergiye characters joined with uṣṣmen characters:

i. Characters joined with

a. preceding श्, ष् or स् ; or b. following श, ष or स्

ii. Characters joined with

a. preceding ह् ; or b. following ह

---

1. Compare reference to 'sandhi' of vowels, in Chapter 2, 2.i.  
2. The Vedic character ऌ, [ə], is included in this class.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined<sup>1</sup>.

क्क	क्ख	ग्ग	ग्घ	ङ्ङ	च्च	ज्ज	ज्ज्	ज्ज्	--
-kke	-kkhe	-gge	-ggha	-ṅṅe <sup>2</sup>	-cche	-cche	-jje	-jjhe	--
ट्ट	ट्ठ	ड्ड	ड्ढ	ण्ण	त्त	त्थ	द्ध	द्ध	न्न
-tte	-tthe	-dde	-ddhe	-ṇṇe	-tte	-tthe	-dde	-ddhe	-nne
प्प	प्फ	ब्ब	ब्भ	म्म					
-ppe	-pphe	-bbe	-bbhe	-mme					
य्य		ल्ल	व्व		श्श	ष्ष	स्स		--
-yye	--	-lle	-vve <sup>3</sup>		-ṣṣe	-ṣṣe	-sse	--	--
Alternative forms		च्च	ज्ज	ज्ज्	ण्ण	ल्ल			
		-cche	-jje	-jjhe	-ṇṇe	-lle			

The characters ज, र and ह do not occur in this series. The second and fourth characters in each varṅga are formed by combining the alpeprāṇa characters with the corresponding mahapraṇa characters.

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>.

ठक्कुरः कक्खट्ठ दग्गोचरः वाग्धि तिङ्ङुतिङ् उच्चैः इच्छा  
 रज्जुः उज्जति पट्टिका लङ् उड्डीन षड्ढा विषण्ण विषण्ण  
 उत्तम उत्थित उद्देशः बुद्धिः मित्र पिप्पलः फुप्फूस अब्बुः  
 अब्भोगः सम्मतिः संमोहः शय्या उल्लेखः तच्छृणु सन्नद्ध  
 दुश्शील [दुःशील] शतायुष्यु [शतायुःषु] जस्सरजः शुभाँल्लोकान्

1. Conjunct characters which do not occur initially are indicated by prefixing a hyphen in the roman transcription.
2. This character occurs only in the grammatical term given in the reading examples.
3. This character occurs only in combination with preceding र्.
4. Transcription of examples is given on p.52.

Class 2. Two *vergiiya* characters joined.<sup>1</sup>

1. *əghoṣe* and *ghoṣəvet* characters, excluding *ənunasika* characters:

<i>vergeh</i>	<i>əghoṣe</i>				<i>ghoṣəvet</i>			
क - च kə - cə	क्च	--	क्छ	--	ग्ज	--	ग्भ	--
	-kcə	--	-kchə	--	-gje	--	-gjhe	--
क - ट kə - tə	क्ट	टक्	क्ठ	टख	ग्ड	ङ्ग	ग्ढ	ड्य
	-ktə	-tke	-kt̪hə	-tkhə	-gdə	-d̪gə	-gd̪hə	-dg̪hə
क - त kə - tə	क्त	त्क	क्थ	त्ख	ग्द	ङ्ग	ग्ध	ड्य
	-kte	-tke	-kt̪hə	-tkhə	-gdə	-d̪gə	-gd̪hə	-dg̪hə
क - प kə - pə	क्प	प्क	क्फ	प्ख	ग्ब	ब्ग	ग्भ	ब्ध
	-kpə	-pke	-kphə	-pkhə	-gbe	-b̪gə	-gb̪hə	-bg̪hə
च - ट cə - tə	--	ट्च	--	ट्छ	--	ड्ज	--	ड्भ
	--	-t̪ce	--	-t̪che	--	-d̪je	--	-d̪jhe
च - प cə - pə	--	प्च	--	प्छ	--	ब्ज	--	ब्भ
	--	-p̪ce	--	-p̪che	--	-b̪je	--	-b̪jhe
ट - त tə - tə	टत्	त्ट	टथ	त्ठ	ड्द	ड्ड	ड्ध	ड्ठ
	-tt̪ə <sup>2</sup>	-t̪t̪ə	-t̪thə	-t̪t̪hə	-dd̪ə	-dd̪ə	-dd̪hə	-dd̪hə
ट - प tə - pə	ट्प	प्ट	टफ	प्ठ	ड्ब	ब्ड	ड्भ	ब्ठ
	-tp̪ə	-p̪t̪ə	-t̪phə	-p̪t̪hə	-db̪ə	-b̪d̪ə	-db̪hə	-bd̪hə
त् - प t̪ə - p̪ə	त्प	प्	त्फ	प्थ	ड्ब	ब्द	ड्भ	ब्ध
	-tp̪ə	-p̪t̪ə	-t̪phə	-p̪thə	-db̪ə	-bd̪ə	-db̪hə	-bd̪hə

1. Many of these conjunct characters occur only in external sandhi.
2. This combination occurs in the character combining ट्, त् and र .



11. Characters of each vergeh joined with a preceding or following anunasike character of the same vergeh.

a. anunasike character preceding.

कै	क्खै	कै	क्खै	ञ	ञ्च	ञ	ञ्च
-ṅke	-ṅkhe	-ṅge	-ṅghe	-ñce	-ñche	-ñje	-ñjhe
एट	एठ	एड	एढ	न्त	न्थ	न्द	न्ध
-ṅte	-ṅthe	-ṅde	-ṅdhe	-nte	-nthē	-nde	-ndhe
म्प	म्फ	म्ब	म्भ				
-mpe	-mphe	-mbe	-mbhe				

Alternative forms

ञ्झ	ण्ट	ण्ठ	ण्ड	ण्ढ
-ṅjhe	-ṅṭe	-ṅṭhe	-ṅḍe	-ṅḍhe

These characters, representing a preceding homorganic nasal consonant, are usually written in preference to the anusvareh placed on the preceding character, of which examples have been given above<sup>1</sup>. The following examples illustrate the contexts in which the anusvareh may be written, and in which it is not written:

पतन्ति	विनन्ति:	विनन्ति:	लभन्ते	अन्ते	अन्ते
patanti <sup>2</sup>	vinantih or vinentih <sup>3</sup>		labhante <sup>2</sup>	ante or ente <sup>3</sup>	

b. anunasike character following.

ञ	ञ	ञ	ञ	त	ञ	द	ञ	प्प	भम्
-cne	-jñe	-[hñe	-dñe	-tne	-thñe	-dñe <sup>4</sup>	-dhñe	-ppe	-bhñe

The character ञ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and is found, from an early date, included in the syllabic series of characters<sup>5</sup>. In realisation, however, it belongs to this class of

1. See above, Ch.2,3.1.b. 2. Verbal forms. 3. Non-verbal forms.  
4. The combination द - न more usually becomes न्न in sandhi.  
5. See above, Ch.2,1.iii.

conjunct characters. In the order of words in dictionaries, words beginning with **ज्ञ** are placed between words beginning with **जो** and those beginning with **ज्य**.

iii. Characters joined with a preceding or following *anunasika* character of a different *vergeh*:

a. *anunasika* character preceding.

इ ṛ-	इभ -ṛbha	न n-	नक -nke	नग -nge	नच -nce <sup>1</sup>	नज -nje <sup>1</sup>	नफ -nphe	नभ -nbha
---------	-------------	---------	------------	------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	-------------	-------------

Most characters may occur joined with preceding **न**, on account of the frequent occurrence of formative particles ending in **न**.

**इ**, **ण**, also may occur with many characters in external sandhi.

b. *anunasika* character following.

-ण -ṇa	कण -kṇa	गण -gaṇa	भण -bhaṇa				
-न -na	क kna	ख -khna	ग gna	घ ghna	प -pna	ब -bna	भ -bhna
-म -ma	कम -kma	खम -khma	गम -gma	घम -ghma	चम -cma	जम -jma	डम -ḍma
	तम -tma	दम -dma	धम -dhma				

iv. Two *anunasika* characters of different *vergeh*.

इन -ṇa	इम -ṛma	एन -ṇa	एम -ṛma	न्म -nma	मण -maṇa	म ma
-----------	------------	-----------	------------	-------------	-------------	---------

Alternative forms of the conjunct characters in iii. and iv. are formed with **ण**, e.g. **गण** -gaṇa **भण** -bhaṇa **मण** -maṇa **उम** -uma.

1. It is more usual to write **ञ** before characters of the *ca-vergeh*.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. वाक्चल वाक्छलम् पृथग्जनः वाग्भटिति वाक्टीका षट्कोण  
 षट्खेटकम् वाग्धम्बरः स्वङ्गः -वाग्ढौकते- -द्विङ्घोरा- भक्तिः उत्कट  
 उक्थम् उत्स्वात हृद्गत सदगुण दग्ध उद्धाटकः वाक्पटु  
 वाक्फलम् -ककुप्स्वातु- पृथग्भावः ककुब्गुरुः ककुब्घोरा षट्चणः  
 षट्छविः षड्जः -षड्भटिति- अप्चरः ककुप्छविः कुब्ज -ककुब्भटिति-  
 षड्देवाः षड्धा षट्पटि दुप्टीका षट्फण षड्बाहु ककुप्ठक्कुरः  
 अब्दिम्भ षड्भाग ककुब्ढौकते उत्पन्न सत्फलः गुप्त उद्धोधक उद्धवः  
 शब्दः लब्ध भगवद्गीता संयुक्त अद्भुत मद्भक्त बुद्धियुक्त सच्छब्दः

11.a. अङ्कः शङ्कः लिङ्गम् सङ्कः सञ्जयः वाञ्छा अञ्जीरः भञ्ज्मा  
 घुण्टः कण्ठः परिहितः दुण्ठिः अन्तः पन्थक सुन्दर इन्धः  
 कम्पन गुम्फति सम्बन्धः आरम्भः पङ्क्तिः अरुन्द्धा

b. याञ्जा ज्ञानम् हेङ्गाति हेङ्गाति रत्नम् मञ्जा बुञ्जाति पाप्मन्  
 तज्ज्ञेय सञ्ज्ञा संज्ञा विशेषज्ञ जिज्ञासु

111.a. उदङ्भिः महान्कविः दन्फुः दन्भुः

b. ऋक्ण रुग्ण गृग्णाति शक्नोति चरुतुः अग्निः विघ्न  
 मृद्नाति आप्नोति अग्नाभः रुक्मिणी वाग्मिन् वच्मिः अज्मः कुङ्गल  
 आत्मन् पद्मा ध्मात दम्भस् दध्मौ

iv. दिङ्नागः वाङ्मय दिप्नालः<sup>2</sup> परमासः जन्मन् स्मृणाति स्नात

1. For transcription of examples, see p.52. Examples illustrating characters which could occur in sandhi arising from the sequence of words in a sentence are placed between hyphens.  
 2. The first character represents dvi . See Class 3.11.



Class 3. Characters joined with antehatthe characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

क्य	ख्य	ग्य	घ्य	ङ्य	च्य	छ्य	ज्य	भ्य	--
kye	khye	gye	ghye	-gye	oye	-chye	jye	-jhye	--

ट्य	ठ्य	ड्य	ढ्य	ण्य	त्य	थ्य	द्य	ध्य	न्य
-tye	-t̥hye	-dye	-d̥hye	nye	tye	thye	dye	dhye	nye

प्य	फ्य	ब्य	भ्य	म्य
pye	-phye	bye	bhye	mye

य्य	र्य	ल्य	व्य	भ्य	व्य	स्य	ह्य
(yye) <sup>1</sup>	-rye <sup>2</sup>	lye	vye	jye	-sye	syē	hye

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. and 2. with 3.1.

न्य	त्त्य	त्म्य	प्त्य	ग्ध्य	द्भ्य	ब्ज्य
-nnye	-t̥t̥ye	-t̥mye	-ptye	-gdhye	-dbhye	-bjye

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

वाक्यम् ख्यात वैराग्यम् श्लाघ्य<sup>4</sup> उदङ्यशः च्युत वाञ्छ्य ज्योतिस्  
 उज्जयति कापट्यम् शाठ्यम् जाड्यम् अवाढ्य पुण्यम् त्याज्य  
 पथ्य विद्या ध्यानम् कन्या आप्य रिप्यते अद्योनिः अभ्यासः  
 सौम्यम् धैर्यम् अमूल्य व्यूढ दृश्य मनुष्यः रहस्य ह्यस् सैन्यस्य  
 सन्यासः संन्यासः चिन्त्य बुद्ध्या तज्ज्योतिस् वैदग्ध्यम् माहात्म्यम्  
 भक्त्या कौब्ज्यम् सुहृद्भ्यः भगवन्त्यक्तिः -- एवमेतद्यथाऽऽत्य--  
 --गुह्यमध्यात्मसंज्ञितम्-- । अङ्गः सुखमाराध्यः सुखतरमाराध्यते विशेषज्ञः।<sup>5</sup>

1. See under Class 1. 2. The superscribed stroke in this character represents r preceding another consonant. 3. For transcription see p. 53. 4. The first character represents jla. See below under iv.b. 5. Nītīśatakam, verse 3.a.



ii. Characters with following व .

क्व	ख्व	ग्व	घ्व	ङ्व	च्व	छ्व	ज्व	भ्व	
kvə	khvə	gvə	ghvə	-ŋvə	-cvə	-chvə	jvə	jhvə	--
ट्व	ठ्व	ड्व	ढ्व	एव	त्व	थ्व	द्व	ध्व	न्व
-ṭvə	-ṭhvə	-ḍvə	-ḍhvə	-ŋvə	tvə	-thvə	dvə	dhvə	nvə
प्व	--	ब्व	भ्व	म्व					
-pvə	--	-bvə	-bhvə	-mvə					
य्व	र्व	ल्व			भ्व	ष्व	स्व	ह्व	
yvə	-rvə <sup>1</sup>	lvə	(-vvə) <sup>2</sup>		ṣvə <sup>3</sup>	ṣvə	svə	hvə	

अ and फ do not occur in this series. व preceding another character occurs in वण , -vrə, व्र , -vrə, व्र , vrə<sup>4</sup> and वृ , vlə<sup>5</sup>.  
Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. and 2. with 3.1. and ii.

त्त्व	र्व	च्छ्व	त्त्व	द्वय	बध्व	गध्व
-ttvə	-rvvə	-cchvə	-ktvə	-dvya	-bdhvə	-gdhyə

Reading examples.<sup>6</sup>

क्वचित् पक्वान्नम् आरव्योः कृग्वेदः लध्वी उच्छ्व्वासः उज्ज्वल उज्भव  
लद्वः यद्वत्वा षड्विध दद्वम् शृग्वन् त्वरित पृथ्वी उद्विग्न ध्वनिः  
अन्वित आप्वा अग्वहन् रिभ्वन् चम्बोः व्यागुली सर्व सव्व नत्वः  
ईश्वरः विश्व ष्वक्कते अनुस्वारः हे विह्वल विध्वंसः द्वन्द्वः तत्त्वम्  
दुग्ध्वा लब्ध्वा उक्त्वा दान्ना एतद्व्वा विनाति ग्राव्ण<sup>7</sup> प्राड्वशः<sup>7</sup>  
त्यक्त्वाऽऽत्मशुद्धये । ---पुग्यकृतौल्लोकानुषित्वा शाश्वतीः समाः<sup>18</sup>

1. For the superscribed stroke in this character, see below, in iii.a.
2. See -vvə in Class 1.
3. For this form of ज see Ch.2,1.iii.
4. See below, under iii.b.
5. See below, under iv.b.
6. For transcription of examples, see p.53.
7. The initial characters in these words represent grə and pre .
8. From Bhagavadgītā, Ch.6,v.41.a.

111. Characters joined with preceding र् or following र .

a. र् preceding another character.

To represent र् preceding another character a stroke is superscribed on the character before which r is to be realised. This stroke is called रेफः, repheh, the name given to the character र .<sup>1</sup> repheh in this form may be written with any character, but it does not occur with ज or स .

क	च	ट	त	प	य	श	ह
-rkə	-rcə	-rʈə	-rtə	-rpə	-ryə	-rʃə	-rhə

Some of the characters, particularly ग, च, ज, त, द, ध, ब, म, य and व, are frequently doubled when written with repheh. This practice is found in Hindi writing, but is not usual in Marathi writing. Examples:

गर्ग	जर्ज	तर्त	दुर्द	म्मर्	य्यर्	वर्व
-rgge	-rjje	-rtte	-rddhe	-rmme	-ryye	-rvve

Characters written with vowel signs and repheh:

कर्	किर्	कीर्	कुर्	केर्	कैर्	कोर्	कौर्
-rka	-rki	-rkii	-rku	-rke	-rkeṽ	-rko	-rkəṽ

and with repheh and anusvareh:

कर्	किर्	कीर्	कुर्	केर्	कैर्	कौर्
-rkam̐	-rkim̐	-rkiiṁ	-rkum̐	-rkem̐	-rkəṽṁ	-rkəṽṁ

The repheh is placed above the upright stroke of a character, or above the mid-point. It is always written to the right side of any other superscribed stroke, as shown in the examples given below. It is written also with the vowel character ऋ. as in the word निर्ऋतिः.

1. rephe, 'rough'; repheh, 'a rough sound'.

Characters with repheh are written as shown in these examples:

rki	क	कि	कि	कि	rki	क	की	की	की
rke	क	के	के	के	rko	क	को	को	को
rkiṃ	कि	कि	कि	कि	rkeṃ	कौ	कौ	कौ	कौ

In Bombay writing the character representing -rhe is sometimes written as -ह, though the use of this stroke for repheh is more rarely used in writing Sanskrit than in writing Marathi.

b. र following another character.

To represent र following another character, a diagonal stroke is placed against the upright stroke of those characters that have one, or beneath the mid-point of the lower part of a rounded character.

क	--	ग	घ	ङ	--	झ	ञ	--	--
kre	--	gre	-ghre	-ṅre	--	-chre <sup>2</sup>	jre	--	--
ट	--	ड	--	--	त्र	थ	द	ध	न
-tre <sup>3</sup>	--	-dre	--	--	tre	thre	dre	dhre	-nre
प्र	--	ब	भ	म	व	श	स	ह <sup>or</sup> ह	
pre	--	bre	bhre	mre	vre	jre <sup>4</sup>	sre	hre	

Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. to 3.ii. with 3.iii.

क्व	त्प्र	त्य	द्र्य	ध्व	द्रि	न्य	ध्न्य
-ktre	-tpre	-rtre	-drye	-rdhve	-rdre	-ntrye	-rdhnye

1. See above, Ch.2,2.ii. Vowel signs.

2. This combination occurs in the character joining च्छ and र.

3. ट and र are combined in the character representing ष, ट and र.

4. For this form of श, see Ch.2,1.iii.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

a. तर्कः मूर्खः वर्गः वर्गीयः दीर्घः शार्ङ्गः चर्चा मूर्च्छितः अर्जुनः निर्भीतः  
 वातर्चम् वर्णः कर्तुं व्यर्थं दुर्दैवम् अर्थः मनुर्नाम अर्पणम् दुर्बलः गर्भितः  
 ऊर्मिः कर्मन् धार्मिकः पर्यन्तः पर्यतः सूर्यः दुर्लभः पूर्वः सर्व्वः दर्शनम्  
 हर्षः अर्हत् कीर्तिः अर्हनिशम् ऊर्ध्वम् वर्ज्यः मूर्ध्नि मूर्ध्न्याद्यायात्मनः नैऋती  
 दुर्बुद्धैर्युद्धः । श्वेतैर्हयैर्युक्ते । वेदयज्ञाध्यायनैर्न दानैर्न च ---

b. विक्रमः आयहः शीघ्रः प्राङ्गत्री कृच्छ्रः वज्रम् पौङ्गः शत्रुः द्रव्यम्  
 श्रुयः प्रयत्नः प्रेम्णा ब्रुवः भ्रातृ नम्रः व्रजः शुश्रूषा सज्जा ह्रस्वः ह्रस्वः  
 हे हिंस्रः श्राद्धः आर्द्रः आर्द्रः दारिद्र्यम् दारिद्र्यम् संह्रीणः एतच्छ्रुत्वा  
 विग्नतम् षट्त्रिंशः यत्प्रमाणम् जम्बूद्वीपे

iv. Characters combined with preceding ल् or following ल .<sup>2</sup>a. ल् preceding another character.<sup>3</sup>

ल्क	ल्ग	ल्प	ल्फ	ल्ब	ल्भ	ल्म
-lke	-lge	-lpe	-lpha	-lbe	-lbhe	-lme
ल्श	ल्स	ल्ह		Vedic	ळह	
-lfe	-lse	-lhe			-lha	

## b. ल following another character.

क्ल	ग्ल	छ्ल	इल	प्ल	ब्ल	भ्ल
kle	gle	-chle	-dle	ple	ble	bhle
म्ल	व्ल	श्ल or श्ल	ह्ल			
mle	vle	fle	hle			

Most of these characters may be written either by method i. or by method ii., described earlier in this chapter.<sup>4</sup>

1. For transcription, see p. 53.

2. For ल joined with antehatha characters, see i. to iii. above.

3. Vedic ळ is included in this class.

4. See above, 1. Construction of Conjoint Characters.



Examples of conjunct characters of Classes 1. to 3.iii. with 3.iv.

त्प्ल	त्क्ल	च्छ्ल	ल्भ्य
-tple	-tkle	-chle	-lbhye

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

उल्का फल्गु स्वल्प अल्पप्राण गुल्फित उल्ब प्रगल्भ  
 हल्शब्दः हल्सन्धिः बल्ह् प्रागल्भ्यम् जळहु मिळहुषे  
 क्लेशः ग्लौ प्लव पिप्लुः अक्लिङ्ग ककुभ्तामः म्लेच्छः क्लिनाति  
 श्लोकः श्लेषः सिह्लः हादते उच्छ्लस्व उत्क्लेशः उत्प्लव  
 परेषां चेतांसि प्रतिदिवसमाराध्य बहु हा  
 प्रसादं किं नेतुं विशसि हृदय क्लेशकलिलम् ।  
 प्रसन्ने त्वय्यन्तः स्वयमुदितचिन्तामणिगुणे

विमुक्तः सङ्कल्पः किमभिलषितं पुष्यति न ते ॥६२॥<sup>2</sup>

Class 4. vargiye characters joined with preceding or following  
ugsmen characters.

1. Characters joined with श, ष or स .

a. श्, ष् or स् preceding another character.

The following characters occur in this series, some occurring only in external sandhi.

श <sup>3</sup>	श्क	श्च	श्छ	श्भ	श्म	
-ʃ-	-ʃkə	-ʃce	-ʃche	-ʃne	-ʃpe	-ʃme
ष	ष्क	ष्ठ	ष्ठ	ष्ण	ष्प	ष्फ
-ʃ-	-ʃke	-ʃte	-ʃthe	-ʃne	-ʃpe	-ʃphe
स्	स्क	स्व	स्ज	स्त	स्थ	सन
-s-	-ske	-akhe	-sje	-ste	-sthe	-sne
						-spe
						-sphe
						-sme

1. For transcription, see p.54.

2. Vairāgyasātakam, v.62.

3. These characters may be written with either श् or श्.

b. श , ष or स following another character.

The following characters occur in this series, some occurring only in external sandhi.

श ʃə	कश -kʃə	ङ्श -ŋʃə	ज्श -tʃə	ट्श -ʈʃə	न्श -nʃə	प्श -pʃə
ष ʂə	क्ष or क्ष <sup>1</sup> kʃə	ङ्ष <sup>2</sup> -ŋʃə	ट्ष -ʈʃə	न्ष -nʃə	प्ष -pʃə	
स sə	क्स -ksə	ट्स -ʈsə	एस -əsə	त्स -ʈsə	न्स -nsə	प्स -psə

The character क्ष has been included in the syllabic series from an early date, and is not calligraphically a conjunct character.<sup>3</sup> In the order of words in dictionaries, words beginning with क्ष are placed after words beginning with क् .

Conjunct characters of Classes 1. - 3. with Class 4.

स्त्र stra	ष्ट्र -ʃtra	ष्ट्र -ʃtva	क्ष्ण kʃnə	क्षम् -kʃmə	स्त्व -atva	त्स्थ -tstha	त्सन् -tsanə
स्त्र्य stryə	स्त्र्य -stryə	स्त्र्य -tamyə	स्त्र्य -rʃtyə	स्त्र्य -rtanyə			

Calligraphy: kʃə , Bombay form - क्ष क्ष क्ष क्ष

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

- a. आश्चर्यम् प्रश्नः श्मश्रु पुष्कल बृष्कम् सृष्टिः कृष्ण ज्येष्ठ वृष्ट  
पुष्पम् निष्कल ऊष्मन् श्लेष्मा संस्कृत स्वलित भ्रस्ज् स्तब्ध स्थितिः स्त्री  
अन्तस्थ लिग्ध स्पृष्ट स्फूर्तिः भस्म श्रेष्ठत्वम् श्श्रुत दृष्टा दंष्ट्रा वाष्ण्य नमस्तेऽस्तु
- b. प्राक्शिरस् प्रत्यङ्शिरस् ताज्जुका [तान्जुका] षट्शास्त्र रश्नाते अक्षरम् अक्षरम्  
तिर्यङ्षु षट्षष्टिः क्षेब्रज्ञ दिक्सम लिट्सु वत्सः सुगणसरति [सुगण्डसरति] क्षमा

1. Bombay form.

2. This combination usually becomes ड्क्ष .

3. Cf. note on झ , Cl. 2.11.b.

4. For transcription, see p. 54.





Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

1.1. de dhe te phe me pe ne ce de ge  
ke bhe je be ghe ohe the khe jhe je

bheje pede dhene kepe methhe phene ghene khac dedh dame  
ched jhege jape pheje pethe bete ohage pedh gheje gane

gemeke jeget ceneke methene ghejeke peitheke demethe  
dhejeke kepeje bhejeke ganeke ketham khejeke pedake

chedenem penenem netenem kethenem bhenenem jenapede  
gemenem pethenem dhenemede jhenejhenem jhenejhenem

1.11. va ya re la ba the khe te

lava jala khare vad jhere bele vare rane veth  
lebh yeve dhare laye jhere rej rane phel rathe

terale levara bheyem dhevela jethere cerene demere  
nekhare legepe cepale bhavet nayene vecere lafabhe

yamavat vayanam geralem pedekemala kepejavacanem

1.111. pa ha se sa pe de re kho

sara saha set vasa hos jhesa resa ves jave  
set sethe kasa kepe ses haye here jhesa bhesa

sarale kelafe jehet veyes jepethe semeye behale jalabha  
yefes sereje sephale sarase harake pareje rebhase heteke

daferathe jakejem seveyas kelaheh jasanam fetefas  
jelereres nevadefekem sehegamanam kamalevedene defesetem

2.1. e i u e r ii uu o ey l a ev rr

ethe is ut eke ine ot ed eyfe rdh  
uuh edhe iife uche evm rne uudha ihe us  
ed el evm okh re oye udeh rnem  
iiset uuhonam rgebhe ovedhem eysemes upakerehem

2.11. nii bhuu gay ar da ji gev pey me duu  
kr chi nev hey bhii frr fii dr hi hr

duure bhiite rama cora tin dose frte dhrte ruudha  
geyre krj pevla klp drdhe pure phene metla krri  
pitr meru duusi bhiiti hrai guru vrtha fiju setu  
otu iiti etav rtu iti uuru rpi enii iile





ii.a. enkeh senkheh lingem sengheh sepcayeh vapcha enjiireh jhejja  
ghunteh kenthah panditeh dhuqdhah anteh pentheke sundere indheh  
kempene gumpheti sambendheh arembheh penktih arunddha

b. yacna jnanem hehñati hehñati retnem methna budhnati papmen  
tejneye senjna semjna vifesejna jijnasu

iii.a. udeñbhah mehankeviñ drunphuh drunbhuh

b. rkhe rughe grbhñati seknoti cekhnutuh agnih vighne  
mrñnati apnoti eñnabheh rukmiñi vagmin vecmih eñmeh kudmale  
atmen pedma dhmate drbhmes dedhmev

iv. diñnagah vanmeye dvirñaleh senmasah jenmen remñati mnate

Class 3.

i. vekyem khyate veñragyem flaghye udeñyeseñ cyute vapchye jyotis  
ujjhyeti kapeñyem sañhyem jadyem evadhye puryem tyajye  
pethye vidya dhyanam kenya apye riphyyete ebyonih ebhyasah  
señmyem dheñryem emuulye vyyudhe drñye menuseyeh rehesye hyes  
señnyesyeh

senñyasah senñyasah cintye buddhya tejyotis veñdegdhyem mahatmyem  
bhaktya keñbjyem señrdbhyeh bhegevenvyektiñ evemetedyetha--tthe  
guhyemedhyatmesemñjitem eñneh sukhemaradhyeh sukheteremaradhyete  
vifeseñneh

ii. kvacit pekkvannem akhvoh rgvedeh legñvii ucchvasah ujjvale ujjhve  
leñveh yednetva señvidha drñhvem frñven tverite prthvii udvigne  
dhvenih

envite apva ebvahanem ribhven cemvoh yvagulii serve servve nelveh  
iifvereh viñve sevvekte enusvareh hve vihvale vidhvemseñ dvandveh  
tattvem

dugdhva lebdhva uktva davana eteddhva vlinati gravña pranveseh  
tyektva--tmeñuddhye purñekrtamñlokanuñitva sañvetiñ semah

iii.a. terkah muurkhe vergeh vergiye diirghe sarñge cerca muurchita  
arjuneh nirjherah  
dardhyem verñeh kertr vyerthe durdeñvem erdhe menurname erpenem dur-  
bele gerbhite

uurmih kermmen dharmike peryente peryemte suuryeh durlebhe purve  
servve derñenem

herseñ erhet kiirtih eherniñem uurdhvem verñye muurdhni muurdhnyah-  
dhayatmeneh neñrrtiñ  
durbuddheñryuddhe sveteñrheñryukte vedayeñpadhyayeneñrne  
daneñrne ce

b. vikremeh agrehah jñighre pranratrñiñ krcchre vejrem peññdreh  
setruh drevyem  
dhruve prayetneh premña bruve bhratr nemre vreñeh suñruusa sreñva  
hresve hresve  
hreñ himsre fraddhe ardre ardre daridryem daridryem semñriñe  
etecchrutva  
digvretem señtrinñe yetpremanem jembvamrele



iv. ulka phelgu svelpe elpeprane gulphite ulbe pragelbha  
 helfebdeh helsendhih velh pragelbhyem jelhū mīlhuṣe  
 klefeh glēv pleve pipulh eblinge kekubhlabhēh mlecchēh vlinati  
 flokeh jleseh sihlēh hladete ucchlēkhe utklefeh utpleve

pereṣaṃ cetāṃsi pretidivesamaradhya behu ha  
 prasadeṃ kiṃ netuṃ vijesi hrdaye kleṣakēlileṃ  
 prasenne tveyyentēh sveyamuditecintamaṇigūṇe  
 vimuktēh sengkelpēh kimebhileṣiteṃ puṣyati ne te

Class 4.

i.a. aṣṣeryem prafneḥ jmaṣru puṣkale bleṣkem arṣṭih kṛṣṇe  
 puṣpem niṣphale uuṣmen jleṣma saṃskṛte akhēlite bhrasj stēbdhe  
 entehsthe snigdhe sprṣṭe sphuurtih bhāsma jreṣṭhetvam jcyute drṣṭva  
 demṣṭra varṣṇeye nemoṣte-stu

b. prakṣiras pretyenjiras tanjuka tanjuka ṣeṭjastre repṣete ekṣarēṃ  
 tiryenṣu ṣeṭṣeṣṭih kṣetrejṇe dikṣeme liṣu vetseḥ sugenṣereti  
 jlekṣṇe utkṣipte bhēkṣye matsyeh tatsthale kṣvete epkṛtsne kartṣnyem  
 vibhṛeṣṭeṣchenne kermephaleprepsurlēbdhēh nabheṣprṣem dharṣṭyem  
 etatkṣetṛēṃ

ii. grhṇati vahnih hnute brahmaṇe pranghestēh pranghestēh iṣṭanbhanhi

egnimiṣṭe purohitēṃ yājṇesye devamrtvijem / hotarēṃ retnedhatemem  
 egnih puurvobharrṣibhirliḍyo nuuteneṣṛute / se devam eḥa vākṣati

tetrapeṣyetsithitanparthēh pitṛrnethe pitamehan  
 acaryanmatulanbhrantrrputranpēṭtransekhimstetha

sektah kermenyavidvaṃso yatha kurvanti bharete  
 kuryadvidvaṃstetha-sekteṣcikiirṣurlokesengrahem

neṣṭve kiṃcitkeromiiti yukto manyete tatttvevit  
 peṣyenṣṛṇvensprṣenjighṛenneṣnengecchensvepenṣvesen

ajnakīrtih palanem brahmaṇam danem bhogo mitresamreksenem ce  
 yeṣamete ṣaḍgūṇa ne prevrttāh korthāsteṣam parthivopafreyēṇe

## HINDI SECTION





# CHAPTER 1

## ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Devanagari Script is used in writing Hindi (हिन्दी) and the arrangement of the characters in the syllabary is the same as the Sanskrit arrangement.<sup>1</sup> Some of the characters are used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords, but most of them may be found in literary texts. Some of the characters are modified for representing sounds occurring in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

The script is usually referred to as बालबोध (balabodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. Each character is called अक्षर (ekṣar), and the syllabic series is called वर्णमाला (varṇamala, 'character-series'). The terms used by Hindi grammarians to refer to the script are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in Hindi differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters realised with the vowel *e*, these terms are used in this section in the Hindi form, and are transcribed in accordance with the realisation of the characters in Hindi. The following examples illustrate the difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding terms used in this section: Sanskrit अक्षरम् (ekṣarəm), Hindi अक्षर (ekṣar)

विरामः (viraməḥ), विराम (viram)

अन्तःस्थ (antəḥsthe), अन्तस्थ (antəsth)

The table given below in this chapter shows the arrangement of the Hindi syllabary in roman notation. The sounds occurring in Arabic

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

and Persian loanwords, and the intervocalic realisation of the characters realised initially as *qə* and *qhe*, are represented in the roman notation as follows:

*q*, for the voiceless uvular plosive, क़

*x*, for the voiceless velar fricative, ख़

*ɣ*, for the voiced velar fricative, ग़

*z*, for the voiced dental fricative, ज़

*f*, for the voiceless labial fricative, फ़

*ɽ*, *ɽh*, for the retroflex flapped consonants ड़ and ढ़

Nasalisation of vowels is shown by the superscript *̃*.

As the Devanagari system of writing is syllabic, and the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the vowel *ə*, the roman table shows each consonant with this vowel. This vowel, when realised with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent' vowel<sup>1</sup>.

The series of vowels includes 'short' *i* and 'long' *ii*, 'short' *u* and 'long' *uu*. These pairs of vowels occur in Hindi words, some words being always written with the 'short' vowel and others with the 'long' vowel. There are certain pairs of words which are distinguished in meaning by the writing of the 'short' or the 'long' vowel, and other words in which the 'short' or the 'long' vowel is written, but no distinction is made in speech. In transcribing examples, these vowels are written as 'short' or 'long' in accordance with Hindi orthography, and not in relation to 'length' of spoken vowel sounds.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.

## Hindi Syllabary in Roman Notation

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə <sup>1</sup>	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə <sup>2</sup>	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə <sup>2</sup>	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) <sup>3</sup>	(ɲə) <sup>3</sup>	ɳə <sup>4</sup>	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və <sup>5</sup>
Fricatives		Voiceless	xə <sup>6</sup>	ʃə	ʂə <sup>4</sup>	sə	fə <sup>6</sup>
		Voiced	ɣə <sup>6</sup>			zə <sup>6</sup>	
Aspirate			hə				
VOWELS		ə a	i il	u uu	e əy̐	o əv̐	r <sup>7</sup>
MODIFIERS		Nasal - ŋ and ~			Aspirated - h		

Notes on the syllables marked 1 - 7 in the above table:

1. The character representing the syllable kə is modified to represent the uvular plosive, qə.
2. The characters representing these two syllables are modified to represent the medial and final realisation of these characters



as flapped sounds, written as  $\text{ɽ}$  and  $\text{ɽh}$  in the transcription.

3. The characters representing  $\text{ŋə}$  and  $\text{ɲə}$  are not written as single characters in Hindi, but only in combination with other characters, illustrated below in Chapter 3.
4. The two characters representing  $\text{ŋə}$  and  $\text{ʃə}$  occur only in Sanskrit loanwords, and do not occur initially.
5. The character represented by  $\text{və}$  is usually realised with labiodental articulation; or, initially, as a bilabial plosive.
6. These syllables are written by modifying other characters which represent sounds somewhat similar in articulation:  
 $\text{xə}$  with the character for  $\text{khe}$  ;  $\text{fə}$  with the character for  $\text{phe}$  ;  
 $\text{yə}$  with the character for  $\text{ge}$  ;  $\text{zə}$  with the character for  $\text{je}$
7. This vowel, syllabic  $\text{r}$  , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords.

## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the Devanagari Script used in writing Hindi are those given in the Sanskrit section, with the terms which are used by Hindi grammarians in referring to them and to the sounds which they represent. The method of writing the characters is that described in the Introduction, and in the notes on the calligraphy of special characters as they are given in the tables.

The characters, and the realisation of them in reading Hindi, are discussed in this chapter under the same headings as in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers<sup>1</sup>.

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vergiiy' characters, 'əntəsth' characters, and 'uṣṣm' characters<sup>2</sup>. The consonant characters, as they are given in the syllabary, are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel *ə*. Characters realised in this way are described as अकार (əkar). The realisation of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated in the script by writing a diagonal stroke, known as the

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1. for the use of this term.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2. References are given throughout this chapter to the divisions and sub-divisions with the corresponding numbers in Chapter 2. of the Sanskrit section.

विराम (viram)<sup>1</sup> at the foot of the character thus, क् , k- , त् , t- .

The realisation of ěkar consonant characters in reading Hindi differs in some respects from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later, when the characters are discussed in detail.

- a. A final ěkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.<sup>2</sup>
- b. A final ěkar character formed by combining two or more consonant characters<sup>3</sup>, or a final ěkar consonant character preceded by a character written with the anusvar representing a nasal consonant<sup>4</sup>, is usually realised with an ə-glide.
- c. A medial ěkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain contexts, as, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a word of three or more characters and the following character is written with one of the vowel signs<sup>5</sup>. Other contexts are given later, when the characters are discussed in detail.
- d. When an ěkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before the addition of formative particles consisting of a consonant character with a vowel sign.

In the transcription of examples of Hindi words, final ěkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide,

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.      2. ěkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, as described below in notes a. - d., are, however, not written with the viram, which is used mainly in writing certain Sanskrit loanwords.      3. See below, Ch.3.  
 4. See below, 3.1.anusvar.      5. See below, 2.ii.



are transcribed without *a*, and medial *akar* characters realised in this way are written thus, *k'*, *t'*, *p'*, for guidance in reading. Characters which do not occur in an initial position are indicated by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

1. Characters of the *vergily* group.

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters realised as syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel *a*. These characters are placed in five classes, or *वर्ग* (*verg*), according to the position of articulation of the consonant in the syllable they represent. The characters are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>1</sup> Of these characters, *ङ*, *ण* and *ञ*, *ण*, do not occur in Hindi words, and occur in Sanskrit loanwords only in combination with other characters.<sup>2</sup> The character *ण*, *ण*, occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords in literary Hindi. The characters given as 'Bombay' forms are also used in Hindi writing, but less frequently than those given in the tables. Some of the characters are modified to represent certain sounds in Persian and Arabic loanwords and the intervocalic realisation of *ड* and *ढ*.

क	ख	ग	ङ	फ	ड	ढ
ka	ka	ga	ga	fa	-ṛa	-ṛha

The characters *ड* and *ढ* occur only initially; *ड* and *ढ* are never initial, but may be medial or final.

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

1. One character words, realised as a consonant with the vowel *a*.

छ ढ त ठ न

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1.

2. See below, Ch.3.

3. For transcription, see page 85.



2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

कब    बन    भट    चढ़    घन    ठब    छत    चख    फट    घट  
फण    धन    जड़    खम    गज़    गम    कढ़    डग    कफ़    मठ

3. Three character words

मगन    भगड़    फबन    खड़क    कदम    धमक    गज़ब    पढ़त  
भजन    चणक    पकड़    घटक    कथन    छमक    ख़तम    ज़ख़म

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an a-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

धमकत    बचपन    पतझड़    जमघट    फटकन    फटपट

11. Characters of the anteeth group.

There are four characters in this group, representing syllables consisting of an initial semi-vowel with the vowel *e*. The characters are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

When the characters य , *ye* and व , *ve* , occur initially, or with one of the vowel signs, they are realised as consonants followed by a vowel. When they occur medially in a position in which they are realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially in positions in which an *ekar* consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming a diphthong with the vowel of the preceding syllable.

Examples:      यमन      वक      भय      लव  
                  yamen      vek      bhey      lev

The character व is often realised initially or medially as *be* .

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.11.

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

1. One character word.<sup>2</sup> व

2. Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

कर जल वर फल लड़ घर वन तर खल छय  
धर नव जर छल वय बल लव जय यम मर

3. Three character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.

बदल चलन गरज चपल वजन कबर लयन वरण  
गरज तरफ यमल वचन यवन खबर यमक गजल

4. Four and five character words; second characters in four character words and third character in five character words, realised with zero-vowel or with an e-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

मतलब लमछड़ चढ़कर कखट दलकन कटफल  
चमरख खखट परजबट पकड़कर मचलपन

iii. Characters of the uugm group.

This group consists of three characters which are realised as fricative consonants followed by the vowel *ə*, and one which is realised as an aspirate followed by *ə*. These characters are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. The character *ष*, *ʃə*, occurs only in some Sanskrit loanwords used in literary Hindi. It is often realised in ordinary speech as *ʃə*. The last character in the Hindi syllabary is *ह*, *he*.

1. For transcription, see p. 85.

2. This is the only entesth character which occurs as a word.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 1. iii.

In words consisting of *ekar* consonant characters only, the realisation of ह , ha , varies according to its position in the word.

- a. When ह occurs medially preceded by an *ekar* character, and is followed by another consonant character, it is often realised in combination with the vowel *ə* of the preceding character as aspiration accompanying the vowel (æ), as in

शहर	पहर	रहन	लहसन
ʃəher(ʃæhr)	pəher(pæhr)	rəhen(ræhn)	ləhəsən(læhsən)

- b. When ह occurs as a final character following an *ekar* consonant character it is generally realised in combination with the vowel of the preceding character as (a). Examples:

तरह	जगह	Exceptions:	यह	वह	सह
terəh(tera)	jəgəh(jəga)		yəh(yeh)	veh(voh)	səhe

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

- None of the *uṣm* characters occurs as a word.
- Two character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.  
दस हर शठ बस हल कश हम सब हठ  
हक धस यश रस हड़ षट् हद गश सर
- Three character words, the final character realised with zero-vowel.  
शपथ समझ शरण हसद सरस शबर सफ़र  
हज़म सगढ़ समय हलफ़ शकल कलश तरस
- Four character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel, second characters with zero-vowel or with an *ə*-glide.

मसनद	कसरत	हज़रत	सक़श	ख़सलत
हटकन	हरकत	हलचल	मसरफ़	सरदल

1. For transcription, see p.85.



## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.

### 1. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Hindi are the same as those given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>, omitting the characters representing syllabic rr and syllabic l and ll. The character कृ occurs in Sanskrit loanwords used in literary Hindi. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the syllabary, and they are referred to as *ekar*, *akar*, *ikar* and so on. The Bombay forms of the characters are sometimes written in Hindi, but the forms given in the table are more usual.

The general rules concerning the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters should be applied in reading all examples given below, unless special notes are added.

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

#### 1. Words consisting of vowel characters only.

आ आई आओ आप आओ आई आप

#### 2. Words consisting of vowel characters and *ekar* consonant characters.

अब एक ऊठ और उन इन ओढ़ ऊख आग ईख  
ओम् कृण ऋण इस ईद पेश ओर गई गप सई  
इधर ऊपर पेज़न औषध अगर ओझर औरत पेपन

### ii. Vowel Signs.

The vowel signs used in writing Hindi, corresponding with the vowel characters and written with the *ekar* form of the character क, are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>3</sup> Each character represents a

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.1.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.11.

2. For transcription, see p.85.



syllable consisting of a consonant followed by one of the vowels a to əv̄ . The vowel signs are referred to as मात्रा (matra), as in ए की मात्रा ( e kī matra , 'the sign of e ').

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words.

भी सौ का दे पै जी ले या जो खा वे  
के पी धो जा नौ दो जू है से सो थी

2. Two character words.

दूध भात चीज़ बैठ खुल मौज छेद दठ<sup>2</sup> भील  
होय नाव दिन गाय फूट उषा ऋतु हुई धोष  
लिप शुरू पैसा धोबी खाना भीति कृपा बड़ी जाप

3. Three character words.

मैदान हुज़ूर किताब कारण फ़क़ीर तैयार दीजिए  
पृथिवी रुपैये केऊर सुअर देखाओ सुनाई बहुधा

4. Words of four or more characters. Numbers in brackets indicate the realisation of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, if the words are not to be read according to the rules given above. Most words of more than four characters are compounds in which the final character of the first part, if əkar, is realised with zero-vowel.

मज़दूर कमज़ोर अफ़सोस नज़दिक दरवाज़ा घड़ियाल  
बेइनामी इसीलिए चतुराई बैलगाड़ी सौदागर रोज़गारी  
बनावटी [3] मुसलमान [3] ख़बरदार [3] ख़िदमतगार [2,4]

1. For transcription of examples, see p.85.

2. A Sanskrit loanword, with final qhe .

The following rules concerning the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in words which have vowel characters and signs provide some guidance for reading from the script, though the only reliable guide is a knowledge of the spoken language.

- a. When a medial *ekar* consonant character, in a three character word, is followed by a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an *a*-glide, e.g.

रेशमी	अपना	लड़का	लकड़ा	परदा	सदरी
reʃ'mii	ap'na	ləɽ'ka	lək'ɽa	pəɽ'da	səd'rɪi

- b. i. When a verbal base ends in an *ekar* consonant character, this character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an *a*-glide, before formative particles which consist of a consonant character with a vowel sign e.g.

सक	सकना	सकती	बोल	बोलता	बोलते
sək-	sək-na	sək-tii	bol	bol-ta	bol-te

- ii. When a verbal base consists of three or more characters, the final and pre-final characters being *ekar* consonant characters, the realisation of these characters varies according to the form of the formative particles which are added. This variation is illustrated in the following examples:

समझ	समझा	समझता	समझकर	समझाना
səməjh	səm'jha	səməjh-ta	səməjh-ker	səm'jhana

- c. Medial ह , ha , हि , hi and हु , hu are realised as follows:

- i. Medial ह , preceded by a consonant character with a vowel sign is realised as aspiration of the vowel of the preceding syllable.

e.g.	चाहना	मिहगत	तुहमत	बेहतर	सोहबत
	cahna	mihnet	tuhmet	behtar	sobhet

ii. Medial हि , preceded by an əkar character, may be realised in coalescence with the vowel of a preceding əkar character as ə̃h.

e.g. पहिला बहिरा बहिन  
pehila or pẽhla behira or bẽhra behin or bẽhn

iii. Medial हु , preceded by an əkar character, may be realised in coalescence with the vowel of a preceding əkar character as ə̃h.

e.g. बहुत पहुँना  
behut or bẽht pehuṇ-na or pẽhṇ-na

Reading examples, illustrating the above notes, and notes a. and b. under 1.iii (uṣm characters).<sup>1</sup>

- a. खिड़की दूसरा इतना आदमी कपड़ा लोमड़ी बावली फायदा  
b. देखना बैठती लिखता पकड़ाना खबरती पकड़ना ठलफना  
c. तेरह चौदह सुबह बगेरह गहिरा पहचान ठहरना कचहरी

### 3. Modifiers.

The modifiers, अनुस्वार (anusvar) and विसर्ग (visarg) are both used in writing Hindi. These are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup>

#### 1. anusvar.

Both forms of this modifier are used in Hindi, the first form, as in अं , being called the anusvar, and the second form, as in अँ , the cāndrebindu<sup>3</sup>. The anusvar is usually written, in preference to the cāndrebindu, with characters that have any superscribed stroke.

अं आं ईं ईँ उँ ऊँ ऐं ऐँ ओं औं  
aṁ āṁ īṁ īṁ uṁ ūṁ eṁ ēṁ oṁ oṁ

1. For transcription of examples, see p.86.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1. and ii.

3. 'moon and dot'.



The anusvar and candrabindu are realised in Hindi as follows:

- a. As the nasalisation of the vowel of the character with which it is written. The candrabindu is preferred for representing a nasalised vowel, except when the character has a superscribed stroke; e.g.

हां or हाँ	मुंह or मुँह	थीं	में	हैं
hā	mūh	thīi	mē	hēṁ

Reading examples.<sup>1</sup>

मैं जोँ हुँ मेंह नहीं गएँ ऊँट पाँच गाँव गई  
 ओंस ईट जाऊँ कुपं दोनों वहाँ आँखें घूस मैस  
 अँध भोक भोकना देशों दैरी पोंछना भाईओँ पैहुआ  
 आऊँगा जापँगे सोह लहंगा मंहगा हँसना पहुँचना

- b. As the nasal consonant of one of the verg. The anusvar written on a character preceding a vergiily character is realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the following character, or as n when the following character is of the ca-verg. The candrabindu is not usually written to represent a nasal consonant. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final ekar character, the final character is realised with an a-glide<sup>2</sup>.

पंख	कंठ	परंतु	हिंदी	संबंध	कंजूस
paṅkh	kaṁṭh	paṛentu	hindīi	sambandh	kaṁjuus

In writing Sanskrit loanwords, there is an alternative and more frequently used method of representing nasal consonants in this context, by combining characters<sup>2</sup>. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final ekar character, the final character is realised with an a-glide<sup>3</sup>.

1. For transcription, see p.86.  
 3. See above, 1. note b.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 2.11.



In some words, this modifier may be realised as in a. or as in b. The realisation as in b. is more usual when the character with the anusvar is *ekar*. e.g.

अँक	रँग
āk or ɐŋk	rāṅg or rəŋg

Reading Examples.<sup>1</sup>

पंडित	आरंभ	संगत	ठंड	अंजीर	पसंद	बंधन	संघट
कंपना	पंजाब	जंगल	बंडी	सिंग	डिंब	अंदर	अंगुल
शंख	संघ	पंचमी	खंभा	अंत	कुटुंब	मनोरंजक	

c. When the anusvar is written on a character preceding one of the *antasth* or *uṣm* characters, as in Sanskrit loanwords and learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways. Among the several ways of realising the anusvar in this context used by speakers in different parts of India<sup>2</sup>, the usual Hindi practice is illustrated by the following examples:

anusvar before य , र , ल , श , स and ह , realised as n , or as the nasalisation of the vowel of the syllable, e.g.

संयोग	संराग	संलग्न <sup>3</sup>	संशय	अहिंसा	सिंह
sənyog	sənrāg	sənləgn	səɳʃəy	əhinsa	siɳhə
or sɔ̃yog	sɔ̃rāg	sɔ̃ləgn	sɔ̃ʃəy	əhisa	sihə

anusvar before व , realised as m , the character व being usually realised as b in this context, e.g.

संवाद	वारंवार	कुंवारी
səmvad (səmbad)	varemvār (baremvār)	but kūvārī

1. For transcription, see p.86.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.i.note c.

3. The last character in this word represents ग् combined with न.

## 11. viserg.

This modifier is rarely used in writing Hindi. It occurs in some Sanskrit loanwords used mainly in the literary language, and in a few Hindi words. When written with a medial character, it is usually realised either as strong aspiration after the syllable represented by the character with which it is written, as in reading learned words from a literary text; or, in less formal reading, as the doubling of the consonant of the following character; for example:

दुःख, duhkhe or dukkh अंतःकरण, antehkeren or antekkeren

When the viserg is written with a final character, it is realised as strong aspiration following the final syllable, for instance, in learned words such as पुनः, punah, विशेषतः, vifeṣ'teh; or it may be disregarded, as in छः, che.

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The arrangement of the characters of the Hindi syllabary in the traditional order is similar to that given in the Sanskrit section, omitting the vowel characters ऋ, ॠ and ॡ.<sup>1</sup> The table in which all the vowel characters, except ऋ, and the modifiers added to the character अ are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant in the ekar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Hindi the बारहखड़ी, bareh-khṛī, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,4.

These two tables show the order in which the characters are placed as the initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit. Words beginning with the modified characters are placed in the series of words beginning with the corresponding unmodified characters.

#### 5. Numerals.

The numerals used in Hindi are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>1</sup> Both the 'Hindi' forms and the 'Bombay' forms are used in modern Hindi printing.

#### 6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the end of a sentence is marked with an upright stroke of the same height as the upright stroke of a character. Other punctuation marks are used as in English. This system is illustrated in the Hindi prose passage at the end of this section<sup>2</sup>. The system of punctuation used in verse is the same as that used in Sanskrit<sup>3</sup>.

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,5.

2. See end of Ch.3.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.ii. Reading examples.

## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Two or more consonant characters may be combined in writing Hindi to represent consonants which are realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed by combining other characters are called संयुक्ताक्षर (sanyuktakṣer<sup>1</sup>) by Hindi grammarians. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters are described in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. The conjunct characters used in writing Hindi are classified in this chapter in the same way as the Sanskrit conjunct characters<sup>3</sup>.

#### 1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Hindi.

Conjunct characters occur in Hindi in these contexts:

- i. In Hindi words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from other languages; e.g.

बच्चा  
becca

क्योंकि  
kyōki

मक्खी  
mekkhi

- ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words commonly used in Hindi, or learned loanwords used in the literary language; e.g.

पुस्तक  
pustek

स्त्री  
strii

शब्द  
ṣabd

- iii. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

दरखत  
derext

हफ्ता  
hefta

स्टेशन  
stēṣen

---

1. 'joined character'. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1. 3. ibid. Ch.3,3.



## 2. Realisation of conjunct characters in Hindi.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an *ekar* conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an *e*-glide, as in गुप्त , gupt', शास्त्र , jastr'.<sup>1</sup>

The realisation in modern Hindi of *ekar* characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words<sup>2</sup> gives rise to a problem of spelling. For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final *ekar* consonant character, the final character of the base is usually realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other instances, where an *ekar* consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an *ekar* consonant character, and the second part begins with a consonant character.<sup>3</sup>

## 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Hindi.<sup>4</sup>

All the classes of conjunct characters given in the Sanskrit section occur in Hindi, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters are used. Those used in writing Hindi are illustrated by the examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords which are commonly used in Hindi. More rarely used loanwords, some of which may occur in literary Hindi, are included among the examples given with each class in the Sanskrit section.

- 
1. In the transcription of examples, this glide is not indicated in words to which this rule applies.      2. See above, Ch.2,1. notes a. to d.      3. Examples of such words are given below, with each class of conjunct characters.      4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section<sup>1</sup>. Most of the consonant characters of the Hindi syllabary occur in this class, but some occur only in Sanskrit loan-words used in the literary language. The character representing -rrə is written as र्र , the superscribed stroke representing र् when preceding another consonant<sup>2</sup>. The modified characters ड़ and ढ़ do not occur in this class, but क़क़ , qqə , फ़फ़ , ffə , and ज़ज़ , zzə are written in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not written in Sanskrit as the first part of a conjunct character in this class, but in writing Hindi the characters ख़ख़ , khkhə and ठ़ , [h]tʰə are sometimes used. The combination -mmə may be alternatively represented by writing an anusvar with the character preceding म , as in उम्मीद or उंमीद , ummid .

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which two consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

सन्न	बनना	गुस्से	उससे
senn	ben-na <sup>3</sup>	yusse	us-se <sup>4</sup>

Reading examples<sup>5</sup>.

पक्का	हुक्का	मक्खन	लगी	घुग्घू	बच्ची	इच्छा
लज्जा	इज़्ज़त	फ़ज़्ज़र	पट्टा	चिट्ठी	अड्डा	बुड्डा
पत्थर	बदल	शुद्ध	अन्न	छप्पर	फुफ्फूस	डिब्बी
भबभड़	किम्मत	रय्यत	हरा	किल्ली	नव्वे	हिस्सा

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class.1.

3. Verbal form.

5. For transcription, see p.86.

2. See below, Class 3.iii.a.

4. Pronoun with suffix.

Class 2. Two vergiyy characters joined.

The conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Some of the more common conjunct characters of this class occurring in Hindi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are given below, with the addition of some conjunct characters occurring in Persian and Arabic loanwords. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may be found in Hindi texts, in learned loanwords in the literary language.

1. <sup>2</sup>	क्त	त्क	ग्द	द्र	प्त	त्प	ब्द	दु
	-kte	-tke	-gde	-dge	-pte	-tpe	-bde	-dbe
	रत्त	ब्ज	ब्ज	क्त	क्ब	क्फ	फ्त	ब्त
	-rte	-bje	-bze	-qte	-qbe	-qfe	-fte	-bte

ii. Most of the characters given under ii.a. in the Sanskrit section are written in literary Hindi, this method of representing a homorganic nasal consonant preceding one of the vergiyy characters being generally preferred to the use of the anusvar, in writing Sanskrit loanwords<sup>3</sup>. Among the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b., only ज्ञ, jne and त्न, -tne, occur in Hindi. The character ज्ञ is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the syllabic series. It is usually realised as gye, with nasalisation of the following vowel<sup>4</sup>. In Hindi dictionaries, words beginning with this character are placed after words beginning with जौ.

iii. These characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

क्म	ग्न	घ्न	त्म	द्व	प्न
-kme	-gne	-ghne	-tme	-dme	-pne

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 2.

2. The numbers i. - iv. correspond to the arrangement of these characters in the Sanskrit section.

3. See above, Ch.2, i.b.

4. Cf. gye, in Class 3.i. below.



iv. Of the characters in this group, only ड्, -ṛṃ and न्, -ṇṃ occur in Hindi, in Sanskrit loanwords.

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

शक्ति	सकती	रबत	दबता	पद्मा	आदमी
ʃəkti	sək-tii <sup>1</sup>	rəbt	dəb-ta <sup>1</sup>	pədma	ad'mii

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

भक्ति वक्रत सत्कार दसूत सद्गुण वक्रफ एक्कीस  
 कुब्ज सब्ज गुप्त उत्पन्न हफ़ता शब्द लफ़्ज़ लत्फ़  
 लिङ्ग सङ्घ पञ्चमी मञ्चा घण्टा ठण्ड शान्ति लम्पट  
 आरम्भ परन्तु उपरान्त ज्ञान जिज्ञासु रत्न सम्बन्ध  
 रुक्मिणी हुक्म आत्मा ख़त्म लम् उम्दा  
 जन्म वाङ्मय

Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section.<sup>3</sup> Most of the consonant characters of the Hindi syllabary can be combined with following य , though some of these conjunct characters occur only in Sanskrit loanwords in the literary language. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may occur in a Hindi literary text. Of the modified characters, ख़ and ज़ occur combined with following य in Persian and Arabic loanwords.

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.86.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.iii.b.



Reading Examples.<sup>1</sup>

क्यों मुख्य ख्याल ग्यारह ज्यों ज्यादा ढ्योड़ी पुण्य  
 त्यों पथ्य उद्योग मध्य न्याय प्यारी व्यथा सभ्य  
 कार्य्य अमृत्य व्याख्यान अवश्य मनुष्य स्याल व्यथा

## 11. Characters joined with following व .

The series of characters in this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in that section.<sup>2</sup> Only a few of the characters of the Hindi syllabary occur combined with following व , and those that occur are mainly in Sanskrit loanwords. Of the modified characters, only स्व is combined with व .

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

पक्कान्न ख्वाब ग्वार ज्वार तत्त्व द्वारा ध्वनि विश्व  
 स्वामी सर्व सर्व ईश्वर कारा क्वचित् श्वास स्वप्न

## 111. Characters joined with preceding र् or with following र .

## a. र् preceding.

Characters realised with preceding r , represented by the stroke called रेफ (ref), are illustrated, with notes on calligraphy, in the Sanskrit section.<sup>4</sup> These characters occur in Hindi words, in Sanskrit loanwords, and in loanwords from other languages. The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Hindi. The characters ग , ज , त , ब , म , य and व are often doubled when written with ref .

1. For transcription, see p.86. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 3.11.  
 3. For transcription, see p.86. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3, Class 3.111.a.

The following examples illustrate Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being *ekar*, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

कर्ता	करता	सर्व	दरवाज़ा	धर्म	दरमाहा
karta	kar-ta <sup>1</sup>	sarv	dar'vaza	dherm	dar'maha

A few words may be written either with *र* followed by a consonant character or with a character with superscribed *ref* ; e.g.

दरबार	दर्बार	पर्दा	पर्दा	दर्जी	दर्जी
dar'bar	darbar	per'da	perda	dar'jii	darjii

b. *र* following.

Characters realised with *r* following, represented by a short stroke placed either against the upright stroke of the character or beneath the character, are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup> The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Hindi. The majority of such words are loanwords from Sanskrit and English.

Reading examples.<sup>3</sup>

तर्क	फ़र्क	मूर्ख	सुख	वर्ग	दीर्घ	मुर्गी	खर्च	मूर्छित
अर्ज	अर्ज	कोर्ट	गार्ड	वर्णमाला	कीर्ति	अर्थ	उर्दू	अर्द्ध ऊर्फ़
अर्पण	अर्ब	गर्भ	धर्म	आर्य	सर्व	दर्शन	वर्ष	कुर्सी अर्हित
क्रम	क्रम	ग्राम	अंग्रेज़	द्राम	रात्री	पत्र	छिद्र	समुद्र
प्रिय	फ़्राक	नम्र	अबु	श्रम	तीव्र	मन्त्र		

iv. Characters joined with preceding *ल्* or with following *ल्* .

a. *ल्* preceding.

The characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in that section.<sup>4</sup> The characters occurring in Hindi are illustrated by

1. Verbal form. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Gl.3.111.b.  
3. For transcription, see p.86. 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Gl.3.1v.a.

the examples given below. Some words may be written either with ल followed by a consonant character, or with a conjunct character of this class; e.g. बिलकुल or बिल्कुल , bilkul.

b. ल following.

The characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in that section.<sup>1</sup> The examples given below illustrate the characters which occur in Hindi, in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

बल्कि मुल्क फाल्गुण इल्तिजा इल्मी कुल्हाड़ा इल्जाम उल्था  
अक्क (अकल) फस्ल (फसल) इस्लास वस्ल शुक्क क्कास उल्मुख

Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uugm characters.

1. झ , ष or स preceding or following vergiyy characters.

a. झ् , ष् or स् preceding.

The conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>3</sup> Those which are written in Hindi, including those occurring in Sanskrit and other loanwords, are indicated by the examples given below. The following conjunct characters which are not included in the Sanskrit section occur in Hindi, in loanwords from other languages:

झक	झत	झट	झब
-jga	-jte	-ste	-sbe

Hindi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first character being akar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.4.3, Cl.3.1v.b. 2. For transcription, see p.87.  
2. See Sanskrit, Ch.4.3, Cl.4.1.a.



as conjunct characters are illustrated by these examples:

रस्ता	बसता	क्रिस्मत	उसमें
resta	bas-ta <sup>1</sup>	qismet	us-mē <sup>2</sup>

b. श, ष or स following.

The conjunct characters of this class which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. Only a few of these characters occur in Hindi. The characters which occur are illustrated by the reading examples given below. Some additional characters of this class, not included in the Sanskrit series, occur in loanwords from other languages: रक्स , xse , रुश , xʃe , फ़स , fse .

Reading examples.<sup>4</sup>

a. मुश्किल प्रश्न पश्चात् आश्चर्य चश्मा पुष्कल कृष्ण  
राष्ट्र पुस्तक वास्ते वस्त्र स्त्री रास्ता हिन्दुस्थान स्नान  
स्पष्ट स्फूर्ति स्वस्ति स्वस्थ उस्ताद शास्त्र पश्चिम  
किशती इश्तिहा निस्वत इश्क स्कूल स्टेशन पोस्ट

b. अक्षर अक्षर परीक्षा क्षमा लक्ष्मी वत्स प्रत्यक्ष  
बरख़श शरख़स अफ़सोस

ii. ह preceding or following an anunasik character<sup>5</sup>.

Only three characters of this class occur in Hindi, illustrated

by these examples:-

a. ह preceding म , as in ब्राह्मण , brahmaṇ .

b. ह following न् , or म् , as in न्हान , nhan , उन्हें , unhē ,  
उन्हारी unharīi ; म्हारी , mharīi , कुम्हड़ा , kumhara , तुम्हें , tumhē .

1. Verbal form. 2. Pronoun with suffix.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.Cl.4.1.b. 4. For transcription, see p.87.

5. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.Cl.4.11.a. and b.



Hindi prose passage<sup>1</sup>

किसी जाति के जीवन में उसके द्वारा प्रयुक्त शब्दों का अत्यंत महत्वपूर्ण स्थान है। आवश्यकता तथा स्थिति के अनुसार इन प्रयुक्त शब्दों का आगम अथवा लोप तथा वाच्य, लक्ष्य एवं द्योत्य भावों में परिवर्तन होता रहता है। अतएव और सामग्री के अभाव में इन शब्दों के द्वारा किसी जाति के जीवन की भिन्न भिन्न स्थितियों का इतिहास उपस्थित किया जा सकता है। इसी आधार पर आर्य जाति का प्राचीनतम इतिहास प्रस्तुत किया गया है और ज्यों ज्यों सामग्री उपलब्ध होती जा रही है, त्यों त्यों यह इतिहास ठीक किया जा रहा है। इस अवस्था में यह बात स्पष्ट समझ में आ सकती है कि जातीय जीवन में शब्दों का स्थान कितने महत्व का है। जातीय साहित्य को रक्षित करने तथा उसके भविष्य को सुचारु और समुज्ज्वल बनाने के अतिरिक्त वह किसी भाषा की सम्पन्नता या शब्द-बहुलता का सूचक और उस भाषा के साहित्य का अध्ययन करनेवालों का सब से बड़ा सहायक भी होता है। विशेषतः अन्य भाषा-भाषियों और विदेशियों के लिये तो उसका और भी अधिक उपयोग होता है। इन सब दृष्टियों से शब्द-कोश किसी भाषा के साहित्य की मूल्यवान् संपत्ति और उस भाषा के भंडार का सब से बड़ा निदर्शक होता है।

1. Hindi Shabdāsāgar, p.1, ed. Shāmsundardās, pub. 1916, by Kāshi-Nāgarī-Sabha.

Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

1.i. che qhe te the ne  
 keb dhen bhet cerh ghen qheb chet cekh jhet ghet  
 phen then jer xem gez yem qed deg kef meth  
 megen jheger pheben khepek qedem dhemek yezeb perhet  
 bhejen cehak peker ghafek kethen chemek xetem zexem  
 dhem'ket bac'pen pet'jhet jam'ghet phet'ken jhet'pet

1.ii. ve

ker jel ver phel ler gher ven ter khel chay  
 dher nev jer chel vey bel lev jey yem bher  
 bedel calen gerej cepel vezen qeber leyen veren  
 yeraz teref yemel vecen yeven xeber yamek yazel  
 met'leb lem'cher cerh'ker ker'vet del'ken ket'phel  
 cem'rax kher'vet perej'vet peker'ker mecel'pen

1.iii. das her feth bes hel kef hem seb heth  
 heq dhes yef res het set had yaf ser  
 fepeth semejh feren hesed seres feber sefer  
 hezem segerh semey helef sekal kelef teres

mes'nad kes'rat haz'rat ser'kef xas'let  
 het'ken her'ket hel'cal mas'raf sar'del

2.i. a ai ao ae ao ai ae

eb ek uuth evr un in oph uukh ag iikh  
 ojh rn rn is iid eys or geli gee sei  
 idher uuper eyzen evsedh eger ojher evret eypen

2.ii. bhii sev ka de pey jii le ya jo kha ve  
 ke pii dho ja nev do juu hey se so thii

duudh bhat ciiz beyth khul mavj ched drqh jhiil  
 hoy nav din gay jhuut usa rtu huii dhoe  
 lie furuu peysa dhobii xana bhiiti krpa berjii jae

meydan huzuur qitab karer feqlir teyyar diijie  
 prthivii rupeyye keuur suer dekhao sunail behudha

maz'duur	kam'zor	af'sos	maz'dik	der'vaza	gheriyal
beinamii	isilliye	caturaii	bañl'gadii	savdager	roz'garii
benav'tii	musol'man	zeber'dar	xid'met'gar		

p.13. khiṭ'kii duus'ra it'na ad'mii kap'ra lom'rii bav'lii phay'da  
dekh-na bañṭh-tii likh-ta pak'raana ghab'ratii pakeṭ-na qhelek-na  
tereh cāvdeh subeh beyerah gehira pahacan ṭheher-na keceherii

2.1.a.	māy	jō	hū	mēh	nehii	gaē	duṭ	pāc	gāv	gefi
ōs	iit	jaṭu	kuē	donō	vehā	ākhē	ghūus	bhōṣe		
ōdh	bhōk	bhōṣk-na	dejō	dōvrii	pōch-na	bhaiiō	ēqua			
aṭuga	jaēge	sōh	lehōga	mehōga	hās-na	pehūc-na				

b.	paṇḍit	arambh	saget	ṭheṇḍ	enjiir	pesend	bendhen	senghet		
kamp-na	pañjab	jengel	baṇḍii	sing	qimb	ender	engul			
jaṅkh	sengh	penc'mii	khembha	ent	kutumb	manoranjak				

### Chapter 3.

#### Class 1.

pekka	hugqa	mekkhan	loggii	ghugghuu	baccii	iccha
lajja	izzat	jhojjher	peṭṭa	ciṭṭhii	aḍḍa	budḍha
peṭṭher	beddel	fuddh	ann	chapper	phupphuus	qibbi
bhabbhay	kimmat	royyet	herra	killii	navve	hissa

#### Class 2.

i.	bhakti	veqt	satkar	daraxt	sedgun	vaqf	ekbiis
	kubj	sabz	gupt	utpenn	hafta	ṣabd	lafz
ii.	ling	sengh	pepcemii	manjha	ghoṭṭa	ṭheṇḍ	ṣanti
	arambh	parentu	uperant	jnan (gyan)	jijnasu	ratn	sambendh
iii.	rukmini	hugm	atma	xetm	lagn	umda	
iv.	jenm	vanmay					

#### Class 3.i.

kyō	mukhy	xyal	gyerah	jyō	zyada	dyavḍhii	puny
tyō	pāthy	udyog	medhy	nyay	pyarii	byetha	sabhy
karyy	amuuly	vyakhyan	evēfy	manuṣy	yal	vyetha	

#### Class 3.ii.

pekvaan	xvab	gvar	jvar	tettv	dvara	dhveni	viṣv
svamii	sarv	sarvv	iṣṣer	kvara	kvacit	ṣvas	svēpn

#### Class 3.iii.

a. tark ferq muurkh surx vargg diirgh muryii xerc muurchit  
erz erj korṭ garḍ verṇemala kiirti arth urduu erddh uurf  
erpeṇ erb gerbh dhermm ayy sarvv darṣen verṣ kursii erhit

b. kram kram gram angrez ṭram ratrii petr chidr samudr  
priy frak namr abru ṣram tiivr mantr



## Class 3.iv.

bəlki mulk phalgun iltiza ilmi kulhara ilzam ultha  
 əql (əqəl) fəsl (fəsəl) ixlas vəsl fukl klas ulmukh

## Class 4.

i.a. mufkil prəfn pəfcət əfcəry cəfma puskəl kran  
 rəştr pustək vəstə vəstr stril rasta hindusthan anan  
 spəšt əphuurti svesti əvesth ustād fəstr pəfcim  
 kiştii iftiha nisbat ifq skuul stəfən post

b. əkşər əkşər perlikşə kşəma ləkşmii vətə prətyəkş  
 bəxf fəxs əfsos

## Hindi prose passage

kisii jati ke jiven mē us'ke dvara prəyukt jəbdō ka ətyant mehattvəpuurn əthan həy. əvəjyək'ta tetha sthiti ke ənuser in prəyukt jəbdō ka əgəm əth'va ləp tetha vacy, ləkşy evəm dyoty bhavō mē periverten hota rəh-ta həy. ət'evə əvr saməgrii ke əbhav mā in jəbdō ke dvara kisii jati ke jiiven kii bhinn bhinn sthitiyō ka itihās upəsthit kiya ja sək-ta həy. isii adhar per any jati ka praciin'tam itihās prəstut kiya gəya həy əvr jyō jyō saməgrii upaləbdh hotii ja rəhii həy, tyō tyō yeh itihās ſhiik kiya ja rəha həy. is əvestha mē yeh bat spəšt səməjh mē ə sək-tii həy ki jatiy jiiven mē jəbdō ka əthan kit'ne mehattv ka həy. jatiy sahity ko rəkşit kər-ne tetha us-ke bhavişy ko eucarə əvr səmujvəl bənəne ke ətirikt vəh kisii bhəşa kii səmpənn'ta ya jəbd'bəhul'ta ka suucək əvr us bhəşa ke sahity ka ədhyayən kər-ne-valō ka sək se bəşə səhayək bhii hota həy. vijəş'təh any bhəşa-bhəşiyō əvr vidəşiyō ke liye to us-ka əvr bhii ədhik upayog hota həy. in sək drəşiyō se jəbd-kof kisii bhəşa ke sahity kii muulyevan səmpətti əvr us bhəşa ke bharḍar ka sək se bəşə niderfək hota həy.





## MARATHI SECTION



## CHAPTER 1

### ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Devanagari Script is used in writing Marathi ( मराठी ) and the arrangement of the characters in the syllabary is the same as the Sanskrit arrangement<sup>1</sup>. Some of the characters are used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords, but most of them may be found in literary texts.

The script is usually referred to as बालबोध (balabodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. This name is used to refer to the Devanagari script to distinguish it from the cursive script also used in writing Marathi, and known as मोडी (modii). Each character is called अक्षर (akṣar) and the syllabic series is called वर्णमाला (varṇamālā), 'character-series'. The terms used by Marathi grammarians in referring to the characters are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in Marathi differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters, these terms are used in this section in their Marathi form, and transcribed in accordance with the Marathi realisation of the characters. The difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding Marathi terms is illustrated by these examples:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम् (akṣaram),	Marathi	अक्षर (akṣar)
	विरामः (viramah),		विराम (viram)
	अन्तःस्थ (antastha),		अन्तस्थ (antasth)

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.



The table given below shows the arrangement of the Marathi syllabary in roman notation. As the system of writing is syllabic, the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the vowel *ə*. The roman table shows each consonant written with this vowel, which, when it is realised with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent vowel'.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
P l o s i v e s	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə tʃə <sup>1</sup>	tə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə ʒə <sup>1</sup>	də	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə zhə <sup>1</sup>	dhə	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) <sup>2</sup>	(ɲə) <sup>2</sup>	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və <sup>3</sup>
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə <sup>4</sup>	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS		ə   a	i   ii	u   uu	e   əy	o   əv	r <sup>4</sup>
MODIFIERS <sup>5</sup>		Nasal - ɳ , or ~ Aspirated - h					

1. - 4. See notes on following page. 5. See Sanskrit, Chapter 1.

Notes on the syllables marked 1. - 4. in the roman table:

1. The characters representing *ca* , *je* and *jhe* are realised in some words as alveolar consonants, with fricative or affricated articulation. This realisation is transcribed as *tse* , *ze* and *zhe* , as shown in the table.
2. The characters representing *ge* and *pe* do not occur as single characters, but only in combination with other characters, and only in Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language.
3. The character representing *va* is usually realised with labiodental articulation.
4. The characters representing *ge* and syllabic *r* occur only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The series of vowels includes 'short' *i* and 'long' *ii*, 'short' *u* and 'long' *uu*. These pairs of vowels occur in Marathi words, and the characters representing the 'short' and the 'long' vowels are written according to certain rules of orthography<sup>1</sup>. This distinction between the 'short' and the 'long' vowels is preserved in the transcription of the characters, though in modern Marathi speech there is often little difference between the pronunciation of words written with the characters representing the 'short' or the 'long' vowels.

The term 'modifier' is explained in the Sanskrit section. Fully nasalised vowels are rare in Marathi and the symbol *ṃ* is used for transcribing the mark of nasalisation only in a systematic transcription of examples for the purpose of describing the contexts in which it is realised. In words in which this mark is given zero-realisation, it is left untranscribed.

---

1. See below, end of Chapter 2.

## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The characters of the Devanagari Script used in writing Marathi, and the realisation of them in reading, are discussed in this chapter under the same headings as the characters in the Sanskrit section:

1. Consonant Characters,
2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and
3. Modifiers.

The style of the characters given in the Sanskrit section is the style generally used in Hindi printing and writing. The forms of the characters given in that section as 'Bombay' forms are used in Marathi printing and writing instead of the corresponding Hindi forms. Other differences of line and form may be seen by comparing the characters given in this section with those given in the Sanskrit section. The Hindi style is not used in Marathi printing or writing.

The method of writing the characters is in general the same as that described in the Introduction, and in the notes on the calligraphy of special characters as they are given in the Sanskrit section. When writing the characters, reference should be made to the corresponding groups of characters in that section.<sup>1</sup>

---

1. References are given throughout this chapter to the divisions and sub-divisions with the corresponding numbers in Chapter 2. of the Sanskrit section.



### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'vergiiy' characters, 'əntesth' characters and 'uūsm' characters.<sup>1</sup> As they are given in the syllabary, these characters are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel ə, and they are described as अकार (əkar). The realisation of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated by writing a diagonal stroke known as विराम (viram) at the foot of the character, as in Sanskrit<sup>2</sup>, thus, क्, k-, त्, t-, प्, p-. Characters written with this stroke are described by Marathi grammarians as 'helənt', as in Sanskrit, but in the teaching of writing in Marathi schools the writing of this stroke is called पाय मोडणे (pay modəṇe, 'breaking the foot'), and a character with this stroke is described as लंगडे (lənḡḡḍe, 'lame').

The realisation of əkar consonant characters in reading Marathi differs somewhat from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later when the characters are discussed in detail.

- a. A final əkar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.
- b. A final əkar character formed by combining two or more consonant characters<sup>3</sup>, or a final əkar consonant character preceded by a

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1 - iii. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1. əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, as described below in notes a. - d. are, however, not written with the viram, which is used mainly in writing certain Sanskrit loanwords and Marathi colloquial forms. 3. See below, Ch.3.



character written with the anusvar<sup>1</sup> representing a nasal consonant, is usually realised with an ə-glide.

- c. A medial əkar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain contexts; as, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a word of three or more characters and the following character is written with one of vowel signs.<sup>2</sup> Other contexts are given later, when the characters are discussed in detail.
- d. When an əkar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, before the addition of suffixes consisting of, or beginning with, a consonant character with one of the vowel signs.

In the transcription of Marathi words, final əkar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, are written without ə, and medial əkar consonant characters realised in this way are written thus, k', t', p', for guidance in reading. Reference to these notes should be made when reading the examples given with the characters throughout this chapter. Characters which do not occur as initial characters are indicated by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

#### 1. Characters of the vergiyy group.<sup>3</sup>

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel ə. These characters fall into five वर्ग (verg), or classes. The characters in the table given below may be

1. See below, 2.ii.

2. See below, 2.ii. Vowel signs.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.i.

compared with the Sanskrit characters, written in the Hindi style.

kə-vaṛg	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
	kə	khe	gə	ghe	-ŋə
cə-vaṛg	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
	cə(tʃə)	che	jə(zə)	jhe(zhe)	-ɲə
tə-vaṛg	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
	tə	the	də	dhe	-ɳə
te-vaṛg	त	थ	द	ध	न
	tə	the	də	dhe	ne
pe-vaṛg	प	फ	ब	भ	म
	pə	phe	bə	bhe	mə

The characters ङ and ञ do not occur in Marathi words, but they are written, in combination with other characters, in some Sanskrit loanwords used in the literary language.

The three characters च, ज and झ are realised in reading in two ways, according to the word in which they occur, and the vowels with which they are realised when written with one of the vowel signs.

- The palatal realisation, च as cə, ज as jə, and झ as jhe, is made usually in reading Sanskrit loanwords, and always when these characters have the signs of the vowels i, ii or eṃ.
- The alveolar realisation, च as tʃə, ज as zə, and झ as zhe, is made usually in other words, when these characters

are *ekar*, or when they are written with the signs of the vowels *a* , *u* , *uu* , *o* or *ə*<sup>1</sup>.

- c. When these characters are written with the sign of the vowel *e* , the palatal and alveolar realisations occur in an almost even distribution of words, and even may vary from time to time with changing conventions of speech.

No comprehensive rule can be given for the realisation of these three characters, however, and in the reading examples the palatal realisation should be made unless an indication of the alveolar realisation is given.

The following examples illustrate the varying realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in certain contexts:

- a. As the second character of a four character word:

धमकट , *dheməkəṭe* , realised as *dhəm'kəṭ*

- b. In a verbal form, the realisation changing according to the formative particle or particles added:

चढ , *tṣeqhə* , verbal base, realised as *tṣeqh*

चढत , *tṣeqhətə* , base with त added, realised as *tṣeqhet*

चढतच , *tṣeqhetətṣə* , base with त , and emphatic particle, च realised as *tṣeqh'təṭṣə* .

Reading examples.<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words. Four of the *vergīy* characters occur as words: न ग \*च ढ

1. See below, in this chapter, 2.ii.

2. For transcription of examples, see page 130. The alveolar realisation of *cə-veg* characters is indicated by an asterisk.

2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

जग	पद	खण	बद्ध	मन	ठग	खत	पड	थम
छत	नथ	ठग	कण	डफ	भट	*चख	*जण	*झट

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

मदत	पकड	घटक	भजन	थकत	ठणक	फबत
धमक	खडक	*चटण	*जखम	*पचत	*जपत	*झगड

4. Four character words; second characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, final characters with zero-vowel.

खटपट	धमकट	गडबड	मणगट	थबकट	खणकट
फटकन्	*चमकत	*टचकण	*दचकत	*कचकट	*झटकन्

#### ii. Characters of the antesth group.<sup>1</sup>

The characters of this group given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Marathi characters are:

य	र	ल	व
yə	rə	lə	və

When the characters य and व occur initially, or medially realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially in positions in which ekar consonant characters are realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming a diphthong with the vowel of the preceding syllable. Examples:

यवन	वर	भय	लव	लवकर
yəven	ver	bhey	ləv	ləv'kər

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2.1.ii.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character word. व is the only character in this group which occurs as a word.
2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
 कर जल वर वन जय यर वय घर लठ लय  
 धर कल लठ भर दर लव \*चर \*चल \*जर \*चव
3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
 बदल धरण चलन गवत तनय वचन कणव रयत  
 तलफ ठकल वरव \*चरत \*नजर \*गरज \*मजल \*वजन
4. Four and five character words. Second character in four character words, or third character in five character words, realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
 लवकर करमत परकर टरफल धनगर करवत  
 पलटण \*कचरत पकडवत \*चरबट \*करमतच

iii. Characters of the uṣm group.<sup>2</sup>

The characters of this group given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Marathi characters are:

श ष स and ह  
 ʃə ʃe sɐ he

The character ष occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and when reading words in common use in Marathi, it is often realised as ʃə, except in formal reading. Final ह is usually realised with ə.

1. For transcription, see p.130.  
 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. None of the characters of this group occurs as a word.
2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel, or, in the last three words, with ə .

सर बस यश हट हर सण शक शव फस  
हस षट् खस वश शर रस शह तह सह

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

फणस पसर शपथ सडक समय हरण सरस कलश  
शहर बसव सरक दशक \*हजर लहर \*सहज फसल

4. Four and five character words. Second characters, or characters indicated by numbers in brackets, realised with zero-vowel or with and ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

हरकत हयगय सरवट शतपट सरपण मसलत  
हनवट सरसकट (2) मसणवट (3) समजतच (3)

The last consonant character in the Marathi syllabary is

ळ , -[ə , realised as a retroflex lateral consonant with ə .<sup>2</sup>

Examples of words written with this character:<sup>3</sup>

छळ फळ खळ सरळ \*जवळ हळद वळण ठवळ  
पळस \*चळवळ बळकट \*मजजवळ (2) कळमळत (2) \*जवळसर (3)

The two characters क्ष and ज्ञ are often added after ळ in the Marathi syllabary, but these characters, representing syllables consisting of two consecutive consonants with the vowel ə , do not properly belong to the syllabary, and are discussed later.<sup>4</sup>

---

1. For transcription, see page 130.  
 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii, Vedic character.  
 3. For transcription, see page 130. əkar consonant characters realised as shown in previous examples.  
 4. See below, Ch.3. Conjunct Characters, Classes 2. and 4.

## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs<sup>1</sup>.

### 1. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Marathi are the same as the Sanskrit characters, using the Bombay forms where these differ from the Hindi forms, and omitting syllabic rr , l and ll<sup>2</sup>. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the varṇamala. The calligraphy of the vowel characters is illustrated in the Sanskrit section.

The Marathi vowel characters are:

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	e	ai	o	au

The character ऋ , syllabic r , occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords, used mainly in the literary language. The vowel characters are referred to as akar , ikar , ukar , and so on.

In all reading examples which follow, ekar consonant characters which occur in words having vowel characters or vowel signs should be realised according to the general rules already given, unless special notes are added.

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>.

1. Vowel characters only. आ ए ओ आई

2. Vowel characters with ekar consonant characters.

अड	आण	आठ	ईद	ऊठ	एक	ऐक	ओठ	औट
ऊन	पेट	ईड	ऊस	ओळ	ऐन	औत	पेश	ऋण
सई	मऊ	*जई	नऊ	इतर	उसळ	ओळख	उतर	उखळ
आपण	*ऐवज	उडत	ऐरण	सळई	ओझर	औषध	ओळख	

1. The use of vowel characters and vowel signs is explained in the Sanskrit section, Ch.2,2.1. 2. ibid. 2.2.1.

3. For transcription, see p.130.



## 11. Vowel Signs.

Vowel signs corresponding to each vowel character, except अ , are added to the akar form of consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a to əv̄ . The vowel signs are shown here added to the consonant character क . The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs, and special forms, are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

का	कि	की	कु	कू	कृ	के	कै	को	कौ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke	keṃ	ko	keṃ

In the teaching of writing in schools, the upright stroke of आ , ओ and औ , and of the corresponding vowel signs, as in का , को and कौ , is referred to as काना (kana). This term is also used in referring to the upright stroke in any character. The diagonal superscribed strokes in the characters ए , ओ and औ , and of the vowel signs in के , कै , को and कौ , are referred to as

मात्रा (matra). The signs of the vowels इ and ई are referred to as वेलांटी (velaṅṭii), the sign in कि being डावी वेलांटी (ḍavii velaṅṭii, 'left velaṅṭii') and the sign in की being उजवी वेलांटी (uzavii velaṅṭii, 'right velaṅṭii'). All the vowel signs are referred to as खूण (khuuṇ, plural khuṇa).

In some modern Marathi publications new forms of some of the vowel characters are being used, formed by writing the vowel signs with the character अ , thus:

अि	अी	अु	अू	अृ	अे	अै
i	ii	u	uu	r	e	eṃ

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.11. Calligraphy.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

## 1. One character words.

खा ही तो ने पै धू छि भी गा घे थू हो

## 2. Two character words.

ठीक रूठ झील तेल \*मौज दोष दृढ बैल हित दूध  
काय होय नाव जेव कवि खडू शेव बहु नये बरी  
डोळा पैसा कृपा धोबी शिशु छाती भीति गुरु \*चौदा  
बाई भाऊ ऋषि सुई एके येई ऋतु एके ओळी

## 3. Three character words.

मैदान रुमाल ठेवीन जेवून कौतुक नोकर बेडूक गरूड  
कठोर जीवन \*जमीन देऊळ पाऊस लढाई \*तराजू \*चुइटी  
वगैरे \*चौपाटी पाहिजे मराठी टिकाऊ बैरागी मिकारी  
अितर अेक अैकिला अुतर अूठ अेअीन आअी धुअून

Realisation of medial *ekar* characters in words which have characters with vowel signs in various positions.<sup>2</sup>

- a. When a medial *ekar* character, in a three character word, precedes a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an *e*-glide, and य and व form diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding characters, as in

आणखी	रेशमी	मुलगा	कायदा	बावडी
aŋ'khii	reʃ'mii	mul'ga	kay'da	bav'dii
डोगडी	भाकरी	छकडा	अठरा	कोयता
ʃeg'dii	bhak'rii	chək'da	əth'ra	koy'ta

1. For transcription of examples see p.130.

2. Compare these notes with notes b. and c. above in this chapter.

The realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in words of four or more characters is illustrated in the examples given below. The realisation varies according to the position in each word of the characters with vowel signs, and a knowledge of the language is the only reliable guide to the realisation of such words.

Second character realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide:

शेतकरी	भानगड	वेलदोडा	सडपातळ
ʃet'kerii	bhan'geɖ	vel'doɖa	səɖ'patəɭ

Third character realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide:

ताबडतोब	मोबदला	भातुकली
tabəɖ'tob	mobəɖ'la	bhatuk'lii

Other characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide:

पलिकडचा	परवानगी	समजूतदार
pəlikəɖ'tʃa	pər'van'gii	səm'zuut'dar

- b. When a suffix consisting of, or beginning with, a character with a vowel sign is added to a verbal base ending in an *ekar* consonant character, this final character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide, as in these examples:

बस	बसत	बसतो	वाट	वाटत	वाटतात
bəs	bəsət	bəs-to	vaɭ	vaɭət	vaɭ-tat

When such suffixes are added to verbal bases of three or more characters of which the final and prefinal are *ekar* consonant characters, the realisation of *ekar* characters varies in the way illustrated by the examples given below.

Verbal base of three characters:

समज	समजा	समजत	समजतो	समजतील
səməz	səm'za	səm'zet	səməz-to	səməz-til

Verbal base of four characters, second, third and fourth ekar:

विरघळ	विरघळून	विरघळत	विरघळला
vir'ghəɭ	vir'ghəɭuun	vir'ghəɭət	vir'ghəɭ-la

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. Realisation of ekar consonant characters as in note a. above.

खिडकी कोरडा दुसरा कपडे इकडे टेकडी कुणबी  
 \*चौकशी. कोयता गुडघे अवघा पारधी पवठा बातमी  
 \*टरबूज केरसुणी \*फौजदार शिकवण उबदार \*नुकताच  
 स्वबरदार फसवणूक हातउसना सोडवणूक लहानपणा

2. Realisation of ekar consonant characters as in note b. above.

कळत कळतो पसरा पसरतात सरकून सरकतील  
 घसर घसरून घसरील घसरशील आठवून आठवतील  
 बिघड बिघडून बिघडलेला अडखळत अडखळतात

Realisation of characters of the *ce-verg* with vowel signs.<sup>2</sup>

The three characters च , ज and झ , are always realised as palatal consonants when they are written with the vowel signs of *i* or *ii* , or with any vowel sign in Sanskrit loanwords. They are realised more frequently as alveolar consonants when written with other vowel signs. When written with the vowel sign of *e* , the alveolar or palatal realisation may vary from time to time and from district to district. The realisation of these characters as alveolar or as palatal consonants in various contexts is illustrated by the examples given below, but the only reliable guide for reading the majority of

1. For transcription, see p.131.

2. See above, note on the *vergiy* characters, in 1.1.



words in which these characters occur is a knowledge of the language.

a. Palatal realisation with the vowel signs of i , ii:

चिकट	चीड	भाची	जी	भाजी	माझी
cikeṭ	ciḍ	bhacii	jii	bhajii	majhii

b. Palatal realisation in Sanskrit and Hindi loanwords, and others, with the remaining vowel signs:

वाचन	नीच	चलन	चैन	चहा	चार	चेहरा	चूप
vacan	niic	calan	caṇn	caha	car	cehara	cuup
कचोरा	जन	मजा	उजेड	जुवा	जेवण	झेला	
kacora	jen	meja	ujed	juva	jevaṇ	jhela	

c. Alveolar realisation of these characters, akar, or with any vowel sign except those of i , ii or aṃ :

चटणी	चार	चमचा	चूक	तिचे	चोर	चौक
tṣeṭ'ṇii	tṣar	tṣem'tṣa	tṣuuk	titṣe	tṣor	tṣeṃk
जण	वजन	समज	जागा	बाजू	वाजेल	जोर
zeṇ	vazen	samaz	zaga	bazuu	vazel	zor
झट्कण	झाड	झुडू	माझे	झोप		
zheṭ'keṇ	zhaḍ	zhuḍuup	mazhe	zhop		

The emphatic particle च , written as the final character of a word, is always realised as an alveolar consonant. The words चीज and झीज are realised respectively as ciiz and jhiiz

The vowel characters इ and उ ('short' vowels) and ई and ऊ ('long' vowels), and the corresponding vowel signs, are written in Marathi words according to certain rules of orthography. These rules include reference to the orthography of the modifier known as



the anusvar<sup>1</sup>, and are therefore given in the full statement of Marathi rules of orthography, after the modifiers have been discussed.

### 3. Modifiers.

Both the modifiers occurring in Sanskrit are used in writing Marathi, though the realisation of them differs from the realisation in reading Sanskrit.

#### 1. anusvar.<sup>2</sup>

The anusvar is always written in Marathi in the form of a dot placed above a character, thus:

अं	आं	इं	ईं	उं	एं	ओं
əṁ	aṁ	iṁ	iṁ	uṁ	eṁ	oṁ
कं	कां	किं	कीं	कुं	कें	कों
kəṁ	kaṁ	kiṁ	kiṁ	kuṁ	keṁ	koṁ

The anusvar is written to the right side of a superscribed vowel sign. The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs and the anusvar is given in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section.

The anusvar is realised in Marathi as follows:

- a. The anusvar, originally a mark indicating nasalisation of a vowel, is still written in many Marathi words in which the vowels are not nasalised in standard modern speech. The anusvar in such words is disregarded in reading, though it is still written either to show the etymology of a word, to preserve a distinction of meaning in pairs of words in which one has a vowel which was originally nasalised, or to express grammatical relationships. Characters

1. See below. 3.1.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2.3.1.

written with the anusvar are, however, still realised with nasalisation of the vowel in Konkani speech<sup>1</sup>. The following examples illustrate some of the contexts in which the anusvar is written but not realised in reading.

Words:

तू	तों	कीं	काहीं	दांत	गहू	पोंच
tuu	to	kii	kahii	dat	gehūu	poṭṣ

Pairs of words:

नाव	नांव	पाच	पांच
nav <sup>2</sup>	nav <sup>3</sup>	paṭṣ <sup>4</sup>	paṭṣ <sup>5</sup>

Grammatical forms:

Grammatical forms:					
हे	तीं	बसतों	बोलतें	करूं	
he	tii	bās-to	bol-te	kər-uu	
येतां	बागेत	मुलानें	मुलांनीं	मुलाशीं	घरीं
ye-ta	baḡet	mulane	mulanii	mulaṣii	gherii

An anusvar placed on a final character is never realised, except in certain contexts in modern Marathi writing in which adaptations of the script are made in order to represent colloquial forms of speech, as in drama and dialogue<sup>6</sup>.

- b. In many words, including most Sanskrit loanwords, the anusvar written on a character preceding one of the vergiily characters is realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the consonant represented by the following character, or as *n* before a character of the *ce-verg*. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final *ekar* consonant character,

1. The variety of Marathi speech known as 'Konkani standard' is spoken on the coastal strip south of Bombay, the Konkani (konkən).  
 2. 'boat'. 3. 'name'. 4. 'emerald'. 5. 'five'.  
 6. See below, Marathi rules of orthography.  
 7. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 3.1. note b.

the final character is realised with an ə-glide<sup>1</sup>. This realisation of the anusvar is illustrated by the following examples:

रंग	उंच	अंजीर	उंट	भित	शिंपी	थेंब
reng	untə	ənjiir	unt	bhint	ʃimpii	themb

As in Sanskrit, there is an alternative method of representing nasal consonants preceding vergiḡ characters. This method is described later, in the discussion of conjunct characters<sup>2</sup>.

When suffixes are added to plural nouns and pronouns, the anusvar is written on the character preceding the suffix. This anusvar is realised as n before the various forms of the suffix चा, and often realised before the suffixes ना, नीं and शीं; e.g.

त्यांचा	त्यांची	त्यांना	त्यांनीं	त्यांशीं
tyan-ṭsa <sup>3</sup>	tyan-cii	tyan-na	tyan-nii	tyan-ʃii

- c. When the anusvar is written on a character preceding one of the antasth or uṣm characters, as in Sanskrit loanwords, mostly learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways. Among the ways of realising the anusvar in such words, given in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>, the usual Marathi practice is illustrated by the following examples:

anusvar before य, realised as ʏ, as in संयोग saṃyog

anusvar before ल, realised as ĩ, as in संलग्न saṃleḡn<sup>5</sup>

anusvar before other antasth and uṣm characters, realised as ̃.

e.g. संरक्षण	किंवा	अंश	अहिंसा	मांस	सिंह
səṇreksaṇ <sup>6</sup>	kiṽva	aṽʃ	aḥiṽsa	maṽsa	siṽh

1. See below, Ch.3,2. 2. *ibid.*, 3.Class 11. 3. The first character in these words is त् combined with य. See Ch.3,3.Cl.3.  
 4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1.note c. 5. The last character in this word is ग combined with न. See Ch.3,3.Cl.2.iii. 6. The character क्ष represents क् combined with ष. See Ch.3,3.Cl.4.1.b.



In some eighteenth century manuscripts the character **व्** is inserted between the character with the anusvar and a following antesth or uupm character, forming a conjunct character with it; e.g. **संवहार** , **səvhar** , **सिंह** , **siṅh** , **संरक्षण** , **səvrekṣeṇ** .

- d. The anusvar is realised as nasalisation of a vowel in a few exclamations; e.g. **अं** , **ॐ** , **ऊं** , **ॠ** ; and in the number word **पैंशी** , **ṣṣ̃ʃi**.

#### 11. visarg.

This modifier is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. It is rarely used in writing Marathi. It occurs in a few Sanskrit loanwords, and is sometimes written with exclamations, to indicate prolongation or stress. When it is written with the final character in Sanskrit loanwords, it is realised as **h** followed by the vowel **a** , as in these words: **पुनः** , **punha** , **स्वतः** , **svateha**<sup>2</sup> , **विशेषतः** , **vifeṣ'teḥa** .

When the visarg occurs medially in a word, it is realised either as the doubling of the consonant of the character which follows it, or as aspiration after the vowel of the character with which it is written; e.g. **दुःख** , **dukkh** , **अंतःकरण** , **enteḥkeraṇ** .

When the visarg is written after exclamations, it usually represents a prolongation of the vowel, or aspiration after the vowel, as in these words: **ऊं** , **ūu...** , or **ūuh** ; **छे** , **cheh** ; **वाः** , **vah** .

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.11. 2. The first character in this word is **स्** combined with **व्** . See Ch.2,3.Cl.3.11.



#### 4. The Complete Syllabary.

The arrangement of the characters of the Marathi syllabary in the traditional order is similar to that given in the Sanskrit section,<sup>1</sup> omitting the vowel characters ऋ , लृ and ॠ , and using only the 'Bombay' forms. The table in which the vowel characters (except ऋ ), and the modifiers added to the character अ , are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akar form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Marathi the बाराखडी , barakhedii, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

These two tables show the order in which the characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit, except that no special place is given to characters with the anusvar. This difference in order is illustrated by the following series:

Sanskrit: a ai amya amja amha aka akhe ..

Marathi: a ai aka amke akhe amkhe ... aye amyə amje ..

#### 5. Numerals.

The numerals used in Marathi are the 'Bombay' forms given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>2</sup>

#### 6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the same system of punctuation is used as in English prose. The system used in Marathi verse is the same as the Sanskrit system.<sup>3</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,4.

2. Ibid.,5.

3. Ibid.,6.

Rules of Marathi Orthography.

The rules of Marathi orthography concern the writing of the vowels इ and उ (ह्रस्व, hr̥sv, or 'short' vowels) and ई and ऊ (दीर्घ, diirgh, or 'long' vowels)<sup>1</sup>; and the writing of the anusvar in certain words and in grammatical forms. Some of the traditional rules are being modified in modern Marathi writing, new rules having been prescribed in 1932 by the Maharashtra Literature Society (महाराष्ट्र साहित्य परिषद्, meharasṭre sahitye perisḍ). Some of these rules have become widely accepted. The rules given below are stated first in terms of 'standard' orthography, followed by the modifications recommended by the Maharashtra Literature Society.

1. Rules concerning the writing of इ, ई and उ, ऊ<sup>2</sup>.

a. The 'long' vowel characters and vowel signs are written in a final position; e.g.

बाई baii माळी maḷii

भाऊ bhauu चाकू tsakuu

Exceptions: आणि aṇi, and some Sanskrit loanwords,

such as कवि kevi गुरु guru

The vowels of the 'crude form' of nouns follow this rule regarding 'final' characters before the addition of suffixes; e.g.

मुलीला mulii-la कवीच्या kevi-tṣa गुरूने guruu-ne

Pronouns are written with the 'short' vowels: तिला tila, तुला tula

b. The 'long' vowel characters and vowel signs are written in a medial position immediately before a final akar consonant character; e.g.

ठीक ṭiik जाईल zaiil मूल muul घेऊन gheun

1. See above, Ch.1.

2. These rules apply to the vowel signs corresponding with the vowel characters.

Exceptions: The 'short' vowels are written in some Sanskrit loan-words, e.g. हित , hit , पुरुष , puruṣ ; when they occur with the anusvar before a final ekar consonant character, as in भिंत , bhint, उंच , unṭṣ ; or when they occur before a final conjunct character<sup>1</sup>, as in चित्र , citr<sup>2</sup>, मनुष्य manuṣy<sup>3</sup>. The Sanskrit orthography is preserved in Sanskrit loanwords such as मूर्ख , muurkh<sup>4</sup>, and तीव्र , tiivr<sup>2</sup>.

- c. In all other positions, or followed by any final character except an ekar consonant character, the 'short' vowels are written; e.g.

किती	तिकडे	तुकडा	विहीर	विहिरी-
kitii	tik'de	tuk'da	vihiir	(crude form, vihiriī-)

Exceptions: Some Sanskrit loanwords, e.g. पूजा , puja, भीति bhiiti.

- ii. Rules concerning the anusvar written in grammatical forms.<sup>5</sup>

- a. All neuter forms, singular and plural, ending in ए , ई or ऊ , are written with the anusvar on these final vowels; e.g.

हे	तीं	लुगडीं	करइं	मुलें	माडें
he	tii	lug'dii	ker'duu	mule	bhaṇḍe
मोठें	थोडीं	पडतें	झालें	कलीं	यावें
moṭhe	thoḍii	paḍ-te	zhale	kelii	yave

Exceptions: लोणी , loṇii and पाणी , paṇii . The word गहू , gəhuu , is masculine plural.

In modern Marathi speech, the vowel ए , in the neuter forms of words, is often realised as e , in informal speech. This change of spoken form is often represented by writing the anusvar alone,

1. See below, Ch. 3. 2. ibid. 3. Class 3.iii.b. 3. ibid. Class 3.i.  
4. ibid. Class 3.iii.a. 5. The anusvar in not usually realised in grammatical forms, except in the context given below in b.



as, for instance, in the dialogue of novels or dramas; e.g.

झालें	झालं	भाडें	भाडं	बरें	बरं
zhale	zhale	bhaṇḍe	bhaṇḍe	bare	bare

- b. The anusvar is written on the character which has the vowel of the 'crude form' of words to which the suffix त<sup>1</sup> is added, in the singular, and before all suffixes in the plural, e.g.

घरांत	बागेंत	खोलींत	माणसांहून	मुलांनीं
ghera-t	bage-t	kholii-t	maṇ'sa-huun	mula-nii

The anusvar written on the character representing the 'crude form' of words before the addition of the suffix चा is always realised as n, and often before other suffixes<sup>2</sup>.

- c. The anusvar is written on the characters representing certain suffixes; e.g. नें, नीं, शीं, ईं and आं; and on the final character of particles ending in आ, ई, ऊ and ए; e.g. मार्गे mage, पुढें puḍhe, खालीं khaliī, आतां ata. Exception: कडे kaḍe

Suffixes and particles ending in a character with the vowel sign of ऐ are often spoken in modern Marathi with final e. When these forms occur in the dialogue of dramas or novels, the final character is often written with the anusvar alone, omitting the matra, as in पुढें, puḍhe, पुढं, puḍhe, मार्गे, mage, मार्गं, mage. This use of the anusvar to represent the forms of colloquial speech is sometimes extended to the particle कडे, and to some particles in ऊन; e.g. कडं kaḍe, पासून, pasuun, पासनं pas'ne, तिकडून, tik'duun, तिकडनं, tikaḍ'ne.

1. The mark of nasalisation is part of the suffix, which represents the word आंत, āt. The initial vowel of this word coalesces with the vowel of the crude form of the noun to which it is added as a suffix.  
2. See above, 3. Modifiers, 1.b.



d. The anusvar is written on certain suffixes added to verbal bases:

1st. person singular and plural:

तों -to ते -te ई -ii ए -e ऊं -uu लों -lo लें -le

and the verbal forms आहें , ahe , आहों , aho and नाहीं nahii

2nd. person plural: तां , ta , आं , a , and लां , la

and the verbal forms आहां , aha , and नाहीं , nahii

3rd. person singular and plural: नाहीं nahii and नाहींत nahiit

and all neuter forms which change in the same way as variable adjectives.

Suffixes which are added to form verbal particles:

तां , ta , ताना , tana , ऊं , uu , and णें , ṇe (sometimes written in dialogue as णं and realised as ṇe )

e. The anusvar is written on certain forms of the personal pronouns, when they stand in the same grammatical relationship to other words as nouns and pronouns with the addition of the suffixes

नें and नीं . e.g. मीं , miī आम्हीं , amhiī<sup>1</sup> तुम्हीं , tumhiī<sup>1</sup>, कोणीं , koṇiī .

---

1. The character म्ह represents mhe .

Rules of Orthography of the Maharashtra Literature Society.

The modification of the rules of standard orthography recommended by the Maharashtra Literature Society are mainly concerned with the writing of the anusvar. The rules are stated in the Society's pamphlet **गुढलेखनाचे नवे नियम** (guddhalekhenatse neve niyam) published in Poona in 1936. The most important modifications of the standard rules given above are these:

- a. If the anusvar usually written on certain words (that is, not suffixes or particles) is not realised in modern Marathi speech, it should not be written, unless it is considered important to show the etymology of the word, or unless it is the only means of distinguishing in meaning between pairs of words, as given above in 3.1.note a.
- b. The anusvar usually written on the suffixes **नें** and **नीं**, and on the particles given above in rule 11.c. should be omitted. e.g.

मुलाने	मुलांनी	खाली	मागे	आता
mulane	mulanii	khalii	mage	ata

The anusvar is, however, still written to represent colloquial forms such as those given above in 11.a. and c.

- c. The anusvar usually written on the word **नाहीं**, nahii, should be written only when this verbal form refers to the first person, singular or plural, and the second person plural; and the anusvar on the plural form **नाहींत**, nahiit, should be omitted.
- d. The anusvar written on the final character of the word **कांहीं**, kahii, should be omitted, **कांही**.

## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed in this way are called संयुक्ताक्षर (saṃyuktakṣar) by Marathi grammarians, or जोडाक्षर (zodakṣar) in the teaching of writing in schools. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>, but the style used in writing Marathi corresponds, in the conjunct characters, with the style of the Bombay characters given in the tables in this section<sup>2</sup>. The Marathi conjunct characters are discussed in this chapter in the same classes as the Sanskrit conjunct characters.<sup>3</sup>

#### 1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters occur in Marathi in these contexts:

1. In Marathi words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from the modern languages; e.g.

ढब्बू  
ḡhəbbuu

घड्याळ  
ghedyaḷ

व्हावा  
vhava

- ii. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Marathi, or learned words used only in the literary language; e.g.

पुस्तक  
pustak

पत्र  
pətr

ईश्वर  
iiḡver

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

2. See above, Ch.2.1 - iii.



111. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

रस्ता

resta

कोर्ट

kōrt

स्टेशन

stēṣan

## 2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an ekar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an e-glide, as in फक्त , phakt', शास्त्र jastr'.<sup>1</sup>

The realisation in modern Marathi of ekar characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling.<sup>2</sup> For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final ekar consonant character, the final character of the base is usually realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other contexts, where an ekar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an ekar consonant character, and the second part begins with a consonant character. Examples of such words are given below with each class of conjunct characters.

## 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Marathi.

Conjunct characters of all the classes given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup> occur in Marathi, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters occur. Those which are used in writing Marathi are

1. This glide is not represented in transcribing words to which this rule applies.

2. See Ch.2,1. notes a. and b.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.



shown by examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords frequently used in Marathi. More rarely used loanwords, which may occur in literary Marathi, are included among the examples given with each class in the Sanskrit section.

Class 1. Two similar characters joined.

The series of characters of this class occurring in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Most of the consonant characters of the Marathi syllabary occur in this class. The character representing -rrə is written र्र , the superscribed stroke representing r preceding another consonant<sup>2</sup>.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not usually written as the first part of a conjunct character in this class; but in Marathi writing the characters र्रख , khkhə and ड्र , ṭhṭhə are sometimes used. The combinations -nnə and -mmə are represented in some words by writing the anusvar over the character preceding म or न . e.g.

संमति or सम्मति	गंमत	संनिधि or सन्निधि	अन्न
səmməti	but gəmmet	sənnidhi	but ənn

The following examples illustrate Marathi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

आण्णा	आण्णें	किळा	बोलला	डग्गा	आगगाडी
aṇṇa	aṇ-ṇe <sup>3</sup>	killā	bol-la <sup>3</sup>	ḍəgga	ag'gadī <sup>4</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, Conjunct Characters, Class 1.

2. See below, Class 3.iii.a.

3. Verbal forms.

4. Compound word.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>.

फिक्का अक्कल सख्खी डग्गा कच्चा गच्ची इच्छा लज्जा  
हट्टी लट्ट चिट्ठी खड्डा झाण्णव पत्ता उत्थान र्द्वी बुद्धि  
अन्न छप्पन्न लप्फा ढब्ब हिम्या किरि हल्ली सव्वा इशश हिस्सा

Class 2. Two vergiily characters joined.

The full series of conjunct characters in this class which occur in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. The characters of this class which occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are given below. Some of the examples given in the Sanskrit section may occur as loanwords in Marathi literary texts.

क्त	त्क	ग्द	ङ्ग	ग्ध	द्ध
-kte	-tke	-gde	-dge	-gdhe	-dghe
त्प	प्त	द्द	ब्द	ब्ज	
-tpe	-pte	-dbe	-bde	-bje	

ii. Most of the characters given under ii.a. in the Sanskrit section occur in literary Marathi, representing homorganic nasal consonants; but the method of representing these consonants by writing the anusvar on the preceding character is more often used.<sup>3</sup>

The word देहान्त, dehant, 'death', a learned Sanskrit loanword, is written with the conjunct character, which distinguishes it from the word with a Marathi suffix, देहांत, dehat, 'in the body'. Among the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b. only ज्ञ, jne, and त्न, -tne occur in Marathi. झ is not

1. For transcription, see p.131. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.2. The numbers i. - iv. correspond with the arrangement of these characters in the Sanskrit section. 3. See above, Ch.2,3.1. anusvar.

calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the vernemala. Words beginning with झ are usually placed last in Marathi dictionaries.

iii. These characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

कम	ग्र	घ्न	त्म	द्य	प्र
-kme	-gne	-ghne	-tme	-dme	-pne

iv. Only two characters of this group occur in Marathi, in Sanskrit loanwords: झ , -gme and न्म , -nme .

The examples given below illustrate words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being akar, are realised in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

शक्ति	शक्ती	गुप्त	कापतो	शब्द	उद्धार
ʃakti	ʃek-tii <sup>1</sup>	gupt	kap-to <sup>1</sup>	ʃəbd	ub'dar

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

युक्ति	चमत्कार	सद्गुण	उपोद्घात	मुग्ध	षट्कोण	उत्पन्न
शब्द	गुप्त	सत्फल	समाप्त	उद्भव	उद्बोधक	फक्त
लक्ष	आत्मा	पद्मा	रत्न	ज्ञान	जन्म	वाङ्मय

### Class 3. Characters joined with antasth characters.

1. Characters joined with following य .

The series of characters in this class is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. All the consonant characters of the Marathi syllabary, except ह , ण and झ , ण , occur in this class, though some occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. Many of these characters occur in Marathi

1. Verbal forms.

2. For transcription of examples, see p.131.

3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.1.



as a result of certain grammatical processes. English loanwords are sometimes written with characters joined with य , to represent the vowel sound in words such as बँक , 'bank' and कॅप 'camp'.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

वाक्य	डोक्याला	संख्या	आग्या	च्या	तिच्या
राज्य	ज्याने	तुझ्या	पेट्या	मोठ्याने	चिठ्या
गाड्या	पेट्याचा*	होण्यास	आण्याचे*	त्याच्या	
पोथ्या	उद्यां	मध्ये	न्याहाळणे	प्याला	नफ्याचा*
धोब्याने	अभ्यास	भ्याला	रम्य	सूर्य	खोल्या
कराव्यास	व्याख्यान	अवश्य	रहस्य	मनुष्य	
हाला	माळ्याने	आत्म्याचा*	मुख्य	नद्या	

ii. Characters joined with following व .

Only a few of the conjunct characters in this series, given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>, occur in Marathi, most of which occur in loanwords. The characters which occur in Marathi words, and in some loanwords in common use, are illustrated in the examples given below. Marathi words are written with व्ह , Sanskrit loanwords with ह .

The realisation of a final ekar consonant character in some words which form compounds with the words वाला , vala , or वार , var , illustrates the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar, in the same way as conjunct characters.

For example:

पक्कान्न	but	डाकवाला	ध्वनि	but	बुधवार
pekvaññ		ḍak'vala	dhvṇi		budh'var

1. For transcription, see p.131.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

कचित् ग्वाही उच्छ्वास ज्वाला विश्वास स्वतः  
 ईश्वर स्वच्छ स्वप्न द्वारा सरस्वती केवहां व्हावा  
 तत्त्वज्ञान महत्त्व अन्यय सर्व ध्वजा व्हाळ इवास

111. Characters joined with preceding र् or with following र् .

a. र् preceding another character.

The characters in this series are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. These conjunct characters are formed by placing the stroke called रेफ , reph , above the character before which र् is to be realised as the first of two or more consecutive consonants. The place of this stroke on the various characters, whether skar or with vowel signs, is given in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section. These characters occur in Marathi words, in Sanskrit loanwords, and in loanwords from other languages. Characters are not usually doubled when written with reph in Marathi words, though in the writing of Sanskrit doubling may sometimes occur. The characters which occur in Marathi are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

The following examples illustrate the realisation of र् , with zero-vowel, followed by another consonant character, similar to the realisation of reph written above a consonant character:

कर्ता	करता	अर्पण	सरपण	तर्क	परकर
karta	kar-ta <sup>3</sup>	arpen	sar'pen	terk	par'kar

1. For transcription, see p.131.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.3., Class 3.iii.a.

3. Verbal form.

A special form of reph is written to represent र्, preceding य or ह in Marathi words. This form of reph is sometimes written with ह् in Sanskrit loanwords, but it is not usual to write this form in a Sanskrit text<sup>1</sup>. The following examples illustrate reph written in this form with ह् :

त-हा	क-हाडा	गि-हाईक	ज-हस्व
terha	kerhaḍa	girhaik	rhasv <sup>2</sup>

The writing of reph in this form with य् is usually restricted to Marathi words in which the combination of र and य arises from grammatical processes. Other words are usually written with the superscribed reph. e.g.

सूर्य	सूर्या-	दुसरा	दुसऱ्या-
suury <sup>3</sup>	suurya- <sup>4</sup>	dus'ra	dus'rya- <sup>4</sup>

The word आचार्य, when changed to the 'crude form', before adding suffixes or particles, is distinguished from the 'crude form' of the word आचार्य by this difference in the writing of reph:

आचार्य	आचार्या-	आचारी	आचार्या-
acary <sup>5</sup>	acarya- <sup>4</sup>	acarii <sup>6</sup>	acarya- <sup>4</sup>

Reading examples<sup>7</sup>

तर्क मूर्ख मार्ग दीर्घ खुर्ची खुर्च्या अर्ज\* कोर्ट गाई  
पूर्ण कीर्ति अर्थात् बदल अर्धा अर्पण ऊर्फ बर्फ  
दुर्बल गर्भ धर्म धार्मिक धैर्य सर्व दर्शन हर्ष नर्स  
त-हा कुल-म कु-हाड पूर्वी वर्षे सर्वात अध्या ज्याज्या

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3. 111. a.

2. Sanskrit 'hraise'.

3. Sanskrit loanword.

4. 'crude form'. 5. 'spiritual preceptor'.

6. 'Brahman cook'.

7. For transcription, see p. 131.

b. र following another character.

The full series of these characters is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Only a few of these characters occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords and some English loanwords. For the simplification of printing, new forms such as भ्र , bhre and झ , jre are sometimes used. The reading examples given below illustrate the characters of this group which occur in Marathi.

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

क्रम	क्रम	इयजी	आयह	वास	छिद्र	चित्र
प्रयत्न	प्रीति	अधू	प्राप्त	नम्र	तीव्र	ताम्र
श्रीमंत	सहस्र	व्याण्णव	समुद्र			

iv. Characters with preceding ल् or with following ल् .

a. ल् preceding another character.

The characters of this group which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>3</sup>. The characters occurring in Marathi are illustrated by the words given as reading examples below.

b. ल following another character.

The characters of this group used in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>. The reading examples given below illustrate the characters which occur in Marathi.

The following words illustrate consecutive consonant characters, the first being əkar, realised in the same way as conjunct

characters:	उलटी	बोलतो	घालणें	बसला	घेतला
	ul'tii	bol-to <sup>5</sup>	ghal-ṇe <sup>5</sup>	bas-la <sup>5</sup>	ghet-la <sup>5</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3,3.Cl.3.111.b. 2. For transcription of examples, see p.131. 3. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3,3.Cl.3.1v.a. 4. Ibid., iv.b. 5. Verbal forms.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

बलगना फाल्गुण स्वल्प कोल्हा कल्हई ल्होवी क्वास स्लेट

Class 4. vergiyy characters joined with preceding or following uugm characters.

1. vergiyy characters joined with श , ष or स .

a. श , ष or स् preceding a vergiyy character.

The full series of these characters occurring in Sanskrit is given in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. Those which occur in Marathi are illustrated in the examples given below. Most of the characters occur in Sanskrit loanwords, and the character स्ट occurs in English loanwords.

The following examples illustrate Marathi words in which consecutive consonant characters, the first being akar, are realised in the same way as conjunct characters:

पुस्तक	पुस्तो	नमस्कार	हिसका	पुष्प	ऐसपैस
pustek	pus-to <sup>3</sup>	nameskar	his'ka	pusp	əys'pəys

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

आश्चर्य पश्चिम् पुष्कळ उष्ट राष्ट्र श्रेष्ठ रस्ता तस्त  
 व्यवस्था स्तब्ध निष्फल कृष्ण स्नान स्थिर रस्त्यानें  
 स्त्री स्त्र्या स्पष्ट दष्टि दष्ट्या स्थिति आश्चर्य स्फूर्ति  
 शास्त्र स्नेह स्कूल स्टेशन पोस्ट

1. For transcription, see p.132.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.a.

3. Verbal form.

4. For transcription, see p.132.



b. ष or स following a vergliy character.

The series of characters of this group which occur in Sanskrit are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Only a few of these characters occur in Marathi, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords. These are illustrated in the reading examples given below. The character क्ष, kṣa, is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and is often included in the varṇamala<sup>2</sup>. Words beginning with this character are usually placed in Marathi dictionaries after words beginning with ह.

Reading examples <sup>3</sup>

वत्सल परिक्षा दुर्लक्ष तीक्ष्ण क्षविय वन्स ओक्साबोक्षी  
सूक्ष्म अक्षरशः उत्सुक अकस्मात्

ii. ह preceding or following anunasik ('nasal') characters.

a. ह preceding an anunasik character.

These characters are given in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>. Only one of the characters is used in Marathi, in the word ब्राह्मण brahmaṇ.

b. ह following an anunasik character.

The characters ण्ह, -ṇhe, न्ह, -nhe and म्ह, -mhe, occur in Marathi<sup>5</sup>.

Reading examples<sup>6</sup>.

तुम्ही आम्ही कण्हेन न्हावी म्हातारा उन्हाळा चिन्ह

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Class 4.1.b.

2. Compare note on the character क्ष in Class 2.11.b. above.

3. For transcription of examples, see p.132.

4. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Class 4.11.a. 5. Ibid.b.

6. For transcription of examples, see p.132.

Marathi prose passage<sup>1</sup>

प्रत्येक शहराचें महत्त्व कांहीं एक विशिष्ट गोष्टींत आहे. आपल्या या मुंबई इलाख्यांत आज मुंबई, अहमदाबाद, सोलापूर वगैरे शहरें व्यापारासाठीं प्रसिद्ध आहेत. सातारा, अहमदनगर, विजापूर वगैरे शहरें ऐतिहासिक दृष्ट्या महत्त्वाचीं आहेत. पंढरपूर, नाशिक वगैरे शहरें धार्मिक दृष्ट्या श्रेष्ठ गणिलीं जातात. पुणें शहराची प्रसिद्धि विद्वानांचें माहेरघर म्हणून विशेष आहे. कारण या ठिकाणीं सर्व प्रकारच्या शिक्षणाच्या जितक्या सोयी आहेत, तितक्या इतर ठिकाणीं नाहींत, आणि पूर्वी पेशव्यांच्या वेळीं काय किंवा हल्लींच्या इंग्रजी राजवटींत काय महाराष्ट्रांतील विद्वान् लोकांचें तें एक आवडतें स्थान होऊन राहिलें आहे. पुणें शहर समुद्रसपाटीपासून १८५० फूट उंच आहे. या शहराची स्थापना दोनशें वर्षांपूर्वी शिवाजीमहाराजांचे गुरु दादाजी कोंडदेव यांनीं केली. महाराजांचा वाडा येथें होता आणि रायगड घेईपर्यंत त्यांचे मुख्य ठाणें पुण्यासच असे. महाराजांच्या पश्चात् सातारा हें शहर मराठ्यांच्या सत्तेचें केंद्र झालें. पुण्यानजीक सिंहगड किल्ला, भाटघर येतील धरण व तलाव आणि लष्करां-तील सुंदर इमारती पाहण्यासारख्या आहेत. पुण्यांतील शनिवारवाड्याजवळ श्री शिवाजीमहाराजांचें स्मारक म्हणून त्यांचा अश्वारूढ भव्य पुतळा उभा केलेला आहे.

1. Marathi Vachanmala, Bk.4, p.15, by Vasant Ramchandra Nerurkar, pub. Keshav Bhikaji Dhavale, Girgaum, Bombay.

Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

- 1.1.      ne              ge              tse              dhe
- jag    ped    kher    bəgh    men    thəg    khet    ped    dhem  
chet    neth    dhəg    ken    dəph    bhəṭ    tsekḥ    zen    zhəṭ
- medet    pəkəḍ    ghəṭek    bhejen    thəkəṭ    thənek    phəbet  
dhemək    khəḍək    tseḍhən    zəkḥem    pəṭṣəṭ    zəpəṭ    zhəḡḡḡ
- khəṭ'pəṭ    dhəm'kəṭ    ḡḡḡ'bəḍ    mən'ḡəṭ    thəb'kəṭ    khən'kəṭ  
phəṭ'ken    tsem'kəṭ    təṭṣ'ken    dəṭṣ'kəṭ    kəṭṣ'kəṭ    zhəṭ'ken
- 1.11.    ve
- ker    jel    ver    ven    jey    ther    vey    gher    ləḡh    ləy  
dher    kəl    ləṭh    bher    dər    ləv    tser    tsəl    zər    tsəv
- bedel    dherən    cəlen    ḡəvəṭ    teney    vəcən    kəṇəv    rəyət  
teləph    dhəkəl    verəv    tsərət    nəzer    ḡerəz    məzel    vəzen
- ləv'ker    ker'məṭ    per'ker    tər'phəl    dhən'ḡər    ker'vəṭ  
pəl'tən    kəṭṣ'reṭ    pəkəḍ'vəṭ    tsər'bəṭ    kərəm'təṭṣ
- 1.111.    sər    bəs    yəṭ    həṭ    hər    sən    fək    fəv    phəs  
          həs    ṣəṭ    khəs    vəṭ    ṣər    rəs    ṣəhe    təhe    səhe
- phənəs    pəsər    ṣəpəṭh    səḍək    səməy    hərəṇ    sərəs    kələṭ  
ṣəher    bəsəv    sərək    dəṣək    həzər    ləher    səhez    phəsəl
- hər'kəṭ    həy'ḡəy    sər'vəṭ    ṣəṭ'pəṭ    sər'pən    məs'ləṭ  
hənṣəṭ    sər'səkəṭ    məsən'vəṭ    səməz'təṭṣ
- chəl    phəl    khəl    sərəl    zəvəl    həḡəd    vələṇ    dhəvəl  
pələs    tsəl'vəl    bəl'kəṭ    məz'zəvəl    kəl'mələṭ    zəvəl'sər
- 2.1.      a              e              o              aii
- əḍ    aṇ    aṭh    iid    uuṭh    ek    əyk    oḍh    əṭṭ  
uun    əṭṭ    iid    uus    ol    əyn    əṭṭ    əṭṭ    rṇ  
səli    meuu    zəii    neuu    iter    usəl    oləkh    utər    ukhəl  
apən    əṭṭvəz    uḍəṭ    əṭṭrən    sələii    oḡhər    əṭṭṣədh    oləkh
- 2.11.    kha    hii    to    ne    peṭ    dhuu    chi    bhii    ga    ghe    thuu    ho
- ṭhiik    ruuḡh    jhiil    tel    məvz    doṣ    drḡh    bəṭl    hit    duuḡh  
kay    hoy    nav    jev    kəvi    khəḡuu    ṣev    bəhu    neye    berii  
ḡolə    pəṭṣa    krpa    dhobii    ṣiṣu    chatii    bhiiti    guru    tsəṭṭda  
bāii    bhauu    ṣṣi    suii    eke    yeii    rtu    əṭṭke    olīi



məydan rumal theviin jevuun kəvtuk nokər bequuk geruud  
 kəthor jiiven zemiin deuu pauus ləqhəii tərəzuu tsuiʔii  
 vegeyre tsevpəʔii pahije məraʔhii ʔikauu bəyragii bhikarii  
 iter ek əykila uter uuʔh gheii ai dhuuun

p.106. khiq'kii kor'da dus'ra kəp'de ik'de ʔek'dii kuŋ'bii  
 tsevk'fii koy'ta guq'ghe əv'gha par'dhii ev'dha bat'mii  
 ʔər'buuz ker'suŋii phəvz'dar ʃik'veŋ ub'dar nuk'taʔ  
 khebər'dar phəsəv'ŋuuk hat'us'na soqəv'ŋuuk lehan'pəŋa

kəʔet kəʔ-to pəs'ra pəsər-tat sər'kuun sərək-tiil  
 ghəsər ghəs'ruun ghəs'riil ghəsər-ʃiil aʔh'vuun aʔhəv-tiil  
 bighəq bigh'duun bighəq-lela əq'kheʔet əq'kheʔ-tat

### Chapter 3.

#### Class 1.

phikka əkkəl səkkhii dægga kettša gəccii iccha ləjja  
 heʔʔii ləʔʔhe ciʔʔhii khəqda ʃaŋŋəv pətta utthan rəddii buddhi  
 ənn cheppənn ləppha qhəbbuu hiya kirr həllii səvva iʃʃ hissa

#### Class 2.

yukti	cəmətkar	sədgun	upodghat	mugdh	ʃəʔkon	utpənn
ʃəbd	gupt	səʔphəl	səməpt	udbhəv	udbodhək	phəkt
ləgn	atma	pədma	rətn	jʃan	ʃənm	vəŋməy

#### Class 3.i.

vaky	dokyalā	səŋkhya	agya	ghya	ticya
rajy	jyane	tujhya	peʔya	moʔhyane	ciʔʔhya
gaɟya	pəɟhyatša	honyas	ənyatse	tyacya	
pothya	udya	mədhye	nyahaʔ-ŋe	pyala	nəphyatša
dhobyane	əbhyas	bhyala	rəmy	suury	kholya
kəravyas	vyakhyan	əveʃy	rəhesy	mənəʃy	
hyala	maʔyane	atmyatša	mukhy	nəɟya	

#### Class 3.ii.

kvəcit	gvahii	ucchvas	jvala	viʃvas	svəteh
iʃʃvər	svecc	svepn	dvara	sərəsvətii	kevhə
təttvəjʃan	məhəttv	ənvəy	sərv	dhvəja	vhaʔ
					ʃvas

#### Class 3.iii.

a. tərkh muurkh marg diirgh khurcii khurcya ərz korʔ garq  
 puurn kiirti ərthat verdəl ərdha ərpəŋ uurph bərph  
 durbəl gərbh dhərm dhərmik dhəyry sərɟ dərʃən hərə nərə  
 tərha durləbh kurhaq puurvii vərəʃə sərɟat ərdhya ryarya

b. krəm	krəm	ingreʃii	agrehe	tras	chidr	citr
prəyətŋ	priiti	əbruu	prəpt	nəmr	tiivr	təmrəʔ
ʃriiment	səhesr	tryəŋŋəv	səmuɟr			



## Class 3.iv.

velgēna phalgun svelt kolha kēlhēi lhovii klas sēt

## Class 4.

i.a. aścary pēscim puškēl ušt rašt̥r̥ j̥rēsth̥ rēsta tēst  
 vyēvestha stēbdh̥ nisp̥hēl̥ kr̥ṣṇ̥ snan̥ sthir̥ rēstyane  
 strii strya spēṣṭ̥ dr̥ṣṭ̥i dr̥ṣṭ̥ya sthiti̥ aścary sphuurti  
 jāstr̥ snehē skuul̥ stēfēn̥ post̥

b. vatsēl̥ pēriikṣa durlēkṣ̥ tiikṣṇ̥ kṣētriya vānsē oksabokṣii  
 suukṣm̥ akṣarēfēh̥ utsuk̥ ēk'smat̥

ii. tumhii amhii kēṇhēṇē nhavii mhatara unhaḷa cinh

Marathi Prose Passage<sup>1</sup>

pratyek̥ jēherat̥ṣe mēhettv̥ kahii ek̥ vijīṣṭ̥ goṣṭiit̥ ahe. ap'lya ya mumbēii ilakhyat̥ az mumbēii, āh'mēdabad, solapuūr vagey̥re jēhēre vya-parasath̥ii prāsiddh̥ ahet. satara, āh'mēd'nēgēr, vijapuūr vagey̥re jēhēre ēy̥tihasik̥ dr̥ṣṭ̥ya mēhettvacii ahet. pēṇḍhēr'puūr, nāfik vā-gēy̥re jēhēre dharmik̥ dr̥ṣṭ̥ya j̥rēsth̥ gēṇilii zatāt. puṇē jēheracii prāsiddhi̥ vidvanant̥ṣe māher'ghēr mēṇuun̥ vifēṣ̥ ahe. karēṇ̥ ya ṭhikan̥ii sērv̥ prēkar'cyḁ jikṣēṇacyḁ jīt'kyḁ soyii ahet, tit'kyḁ itēr̥ ṭhikan̥ii nahii, aṇi puurvii̥ pēsvyancyḁ vēḷii kay̥ kiṃvḁ hēllicyḁ iṅgrējii raj'vēḷiit̥ kay̥ mēharaṣṭ̥ratiil̥ vidvan̥ lokant̥ṣe te ek̥ avēḍ'te sthan̥ houun̥ rahile ahe. puṇē jēhēr̥ sē mudrēpāṭiipasuun̥ 1850̥ phuuṭ̥ unt̥ṣ̥ ahe. ya jēheracii̥ sthapēnḁ don̥ jē vērṣapuurvii̥ jivajīmēharajant̥ṣe guru̥ dadajii̥ kōṇḍēdev̥ yanii̥ kēlii. mēharajant̥ṣḁ vāḍḁ yethe̥ hotḁ aṇi̥ ray'gēḍ̥ ghēliperyēnt̥ tyant̥ṣe̥ mukhy̥ ṭhāṇē̥ puṇyasēṭṣ̥ ēsē. mēharajancyḁ pēscat̥ satarḁ hē̥ jēhēr̥ mēraṭhyancyḁ settēṭṣe̥ kēndr̥ zhālē. puṇyāṇējiik̥ siṃhē-gēḍ̥ killa, bhāṭ'ghēr̥ yēthiil̥ dhērēṇ̥ vē̥ telav̥ aṇi̥ lēṣkeratiil̥ sunder̥ imar'tii̥ pah'ṇyasār'khyḁ̄ ahet. puṇyatiil̥ jēnivar'vāḍyazēvēḷ̥ j̥rii̥ jivajīmēharajant̥ṣe̥ smārēk̥ mēṇuun̥ tyant̥ṣḁ ējvaruudh̥ bhēvy̥ putēḷḁ ubhḁ kēlelḁ ahe.

1. ənusvars to be read with zero-realisation are not transcribed in this passage.

## GUJARATI SECTION



# CHAPTER 1

## ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The writing system of Gujarati (ગુજરાતી , gujeratī) is based on the Sanskrit system, with some modifications as in the other modern languages of Northern India which are written in the Devanagari script. The characters of the Gujarati script are arranged in the same way as those of the Devanagari script, given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

The script is referred to as બાળબોધ (bāḷabodh), 'that can be understood by a child'. Each character is called અક્ષર (akṣar), and the syllabic series is called વર્ણમાલા (vaṛṇamāla), 'character-series'. The terms used by Gujarati grammarians to refer to the characters are similar to those used in Sanskrit, but as the realisation of the characters in reading Gujarati differs somewhat from the Sanskrit system in respect of consonant characters realised with the vowel *e* , these terms are used in this section in their Gujarati form and transcribed in accordance with the realisation of the characters in Gujarati. The following examples illustrate the difference between the terms used in the Sanskrit section and the corresponding terms used in this section:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	(akṣarəm)	Gujarati	અક્ષર	(akṣar)
	विरामः	(viraməḥ)		વિરામ	(viram)
	अन्तःस्थ	(antəḥstha)		અન્તઃસ્થ	(antəsth)

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.1.



## GUJARATI SECTION

The table given below shows the arrangement of the Gujarati syllabary in roman notation. As the system of writing is syllabic, and the characters in the syllabary represent syllables consisting of either a vowel, or a consonant followed by the vowel ə, the roman tables show each consonant with this vowel. The vowel ə, when realised in this way with a consonant character, is usually referred to in English texts as the 'inherent vowel'.

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
P l o s i v e s	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirate	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə <sup>1</sup>	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə <sup>1</sup>	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		(ŋə) <sup>2</sup>	(ɲə) <sup>2</sup>	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə	rə	lə	və <sup>3</sup>
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə <sup>4</sup>	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
Lateral					ɭə		
VOWELS		ə   a	i   ii	u   uu	e, ɛ <sup>5</sup> ə̃	o, ɔ <sup>5</sup> ə̃	r <sup>4</sup>
MODIFIERS		Nasal - ŋ   or   ~   Aspirated - h					

1. - 5. See notes on following page.

1. The characters represented by *ḍe* and *ḍhe* are realised medially and finally with the flapped consonants *ṛ* and *ṛh* in some words.
2. The characters represented by *ṇe* and *ṇhe* occur only in combination with other consonants, in Sanskrit loanwords.
3. The character represented by *ve* is usually realised with labiodental articulation.
4. The characters represented by *ṣe* and syllabic *r* occur only in Sanskrit loanwords.
5. The vowels *e* and *ē* are written in the script with the same character, or vowel sign, usually transcribed as *e*. The vowels *o* and *ō* are also written with the same character, or vowel sign, usually transcribed as *o*.

The series of vowels includes 'short' *i* and 'long' *ī*, 'short' *u* and 'long' *ū*. These pairs of vowels occur in Gujarati words, and the characters representing the 'short' and the 'long' vowels are written according to certain rules of orthography<sup>1</sup>. This distinction between the 'short' and 'long' vowels is preserved in this work in the transcription of the characters, though in modern Gujarati speech there is often little difference between the pronunciation of words written with the characters representing the 'short' or the 'long' vowels.

---

1. See Chapter 2, under 2.ii.Vowel Signs.

## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The Gujarati characters are a modified form of the Devanagari characters, with some changes of line and form which have come about through an adaptation of the script for cursive writing. The characters are more rounded than those of the Devanagari script, and do not have a head-stroke. Comparison with the characters in the Sanskrit section will show how the Gujarati characters are related in form to those of the Devanagari script. The method of writing the Gujarati characters is in general the method described in the Introduction, and reference should be made to the notes on calligraphy given with each group of characters in the Sanskrit section. Special notes are given below on the calligraphy of any characters of which the order of strokes cannot be easily deduced from the Devanagari characters.

The Gujarati characters are described in this chapter under the same headings as the characters in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs, and Modifiers.

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: 'वर्गिय' characters, 'अंतस्थ' characters and 'उष्म' characters<sup>1</sup>. As they are given in the syllabary, these characters are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant, or semi-vowel, followed by the vowel *e*, and they are described as २५६२ (akar). The realisation

---

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1 - iii.



of a consonant character without this vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, is indicated by a diagonal stroke written at the foot of the character, thus ક, k-, ત, t-, and so on, as in Sanskrit. This stroke is called **વિરામ** (viram)<sup>1</sup> and a character written with this stroke is called 'halant' by Gujarati grammarians; but in the teaching of writing in schools, characters written with this stroke are described as ખોડું (khoḍū, 'lame').

The realisation of ekar consonant characters in reading Gujarati differs somewhat from the realisation of these characters in Sanskrit. The following notes may be regarded as general guiding principles to which reference may be made later when the characters are discussed in detail.

- a. A final ekar consonant character is usually realised with zero-vowel, except in a few Sanskrit loanwords.<sup>2</sup>
- b. A final ekar consonant character formed by combining two or more characters<sup>3</sup>, or a final ekar consonant character preceded by a character written with the anusvar representing a nasal consonant<sup>4</sup>, is usually realised with an a-glide.
- c. A medial ekar consonant character is realised in certain contexts with zero-vowel, or with an a-glide, for instance, when such a character occurs as the second character of a three character word, and the final character has one of the vowel signs<sup>5</sup>.
- d. When an ekar consonant character is the final character of a verbal base, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2.1.      2. The viram is not written in Gujarati with characters which are realised in this way; it is written only in a few Sanskrit loanwords.      3. See below, Ch. 3.2.  
4. See below, 3.1.b.      5. See below, 2.11.



a-glide, before the addition of suffixes consisting of, or beginning with, a consonant character with one of the vowel signs.

For guidance in reading, final *ekar* consonant characters realised with zero-vowel are transcribed without *a*, and medial *ekar* consonant characters realised with zero-vowel or with an *a*-glide are transcribed thus: *k'*, *t'*, *p'*.

1. Characters of the *vergiiy* group (વર્ગીય)<sup>1</sup>.

The first group of consonant characters consists of twentyfive characters representing syllables with an initial plosive consonant followed by the vowel *a*. These characters fall into five *વર્ગ* (*verg*), or classes, according to the five positions of articulation.

ke-verg	ક	ખ	ગ	ઘ	ઙ
	ke	khe	ga	ghe	-ṅa <sup>2</sup>
ce-verg	ચ	છ	જ	ઝ	ઞ
	ca	che	ja	jhe	-ṇa
te-verg	ટ	ઠ	ડ	ઢ	ણ
	ṭa	ṭhe	ḍa	ḍhe	-ṇa
ta-verg	ત	થ	દ	ધ	ન
	ta	the	da	dhe	na
pe-verg	પ	ફ	બ	ભ	મ
	pa	phe	ba	bhe	ma

An older form of ફ is ફ.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 1.1. 2. Characters which do not occur initially are shown by a hyphen prefixed to the syllable in the roman transcription.

The characters ક , ફ , ઝ and ઠ are written thus:

ક	૮	૨	ક	ફ	૮	૨	ફ
ઝ	૦	૪	ઝ	ઠ	૮	૦	ઠ

The śkar consonant characters are referred to, as for instance in spelling, thus: ક , કક્કો (kekko), ત , તત્તો (tetto), and so on.

The characters ડ and ણ do not occur in Gujarati words, but they are written, in combination with other characters, in some Sanskrit loanwords in the literary language. The characters ડ and ણ are realised medially and finally as [ɖ] and [ɳ] in certain words. Examples of this realisation are given later, after the vowel signs are discussed.<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words. Four of the vergily characters occur as words: ત ઇ ય ઠ

2. Two character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

ધન પાલ નમ ગજ ચડ મઠ કમ ભણ ઇઠ ઠાલ  
ઝાલ ઘડ ધન તક ચડ ઠમ બન ફલ જડ પાલ

3. Three character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.

બદન પકડ ઝાડા મઠક ચમન ફલ તાડ ગમત  
જમણ બાડ નાલ ધમક ઠપલ તનમ ભજન પઠન

4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an e-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

ઘડપાલ ભલકણ ચકમક ઝાપલ બડધલ ગજકણ

1. See below, under 2.11.

2. For transcription, see p.168.

## 11. Characters of the antasth group (અન્તસ્થ)¹

There are four Gujarati characters in this group, as in the same group of Sanskrit characters.

ય

ye

લ

le

ર

re

વ

ve

When the characters ય and વ occur initially, or medially realised with a following vowel, they are realised as consonants. When they occur medially, in positions in which ekar consonant characters are realised with zero-vowel, or finally, they are realised as semi-vowels, forming diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding syllable.<sup>2</sup>

e.g.

યજન

yæjən

વન

vən

ભય

bhey

જવ

jæv

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

1. None of the antasth characters occurs as a word.
2. Two character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
રથ પર લખ ઘર ખલ ખર રજ રવ લગ વય  
યવ લય છર ઝલ વર રડ કલ ગય ભર જય
3. Three character words, final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
લગ્યક છલર વરધ ઝરણ ભરડ વખત રતન તરફ  
રવડ વરઢ લગણ યવન ચરક પલખ પવન ભરણ
4. Four character words, second characters realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide; final characters realised with zero-vowel.  
કલતર લગભગ પડતર લડકણ તરતજ ઢકતર

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.ii.

2. Further examples of the realisation of these two characters are given below, under 2.ii.

3. For transcription, see p.168.



iii. Characters of the uṣm group (ઉષ્મ) <sup>1</sup>

These characters as given in the Sanskrit section are written in the Hindi style. The Gujarati characters are:

શ

ʃə

ષ

ʃə

સ

sə

હ

hə

The character ષ occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and when written in words in common use in Gujarati, it is often realised as ʃə except in formal reading.

Reading examples. <sup>2</sup>

1. None of the characters in this group occurs as a word.
2. Two character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

રસ શઠ સઠ શણ હસ ઢશ યશ સર હસ શત

3. Three character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel.

લસણ હલક સરસ હરખ શપય સમય હરણ ફણસ

4. Four and five character words; final characters realised with zero-vowel, second character in four character words, third character in the five character word, realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide.

સમજણ શરખત સરકટ કસરત હરકત વકતસર

The last consonant character in the Gujarati syllabary is ળ, -[ɭ]<sup>3</sup>, realised as a retroflex lateral consonant with ə.

Reading examples. <sup>2</sup>

ફળ ઢળ હળ બળઢ ધવળ કમળ પરવળ હળવટ

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii. 2. For transcription, see p.168.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii. Vedic character.



The two characters **ઢ** and **ઙ**, each representing syllables consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel **ə**, are often placed at the end of the series of consonant characters in the vernemala, but they do not properly belong to the syllabary, and they are discussed later<sup>1</sup>.

## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.<sup>2</sup>

### 1. Vowel Characters.

The vowel characters used in writing Gujarati correspond with the vowel characters in Sanskrit though the forms differ. Syllabic **rr**, **l** and **ll** do not occur in Gujarati<sup>3</sup>. The vowel characters are usually placed first in the vernemala.

<b>અ</b>	<b>આ</b>	<b>ઇ</b>	<b>ઈ</b>	<b>ઉ</b>	<b>ઊ</b>
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū
<b>ઋ</b>	<b>એ</b>	<b>ઐ</b>	<b>ઓ</b>	<b>ઔ</b>	
syllabic r	e, e <sup>4</sup>	ai	o, o <sup>4</sup>	au	

The character **ઋ**, syllabic **r**, occurs only in a few Sanskrit loanwords, used mainly in the literary language. The vowel characters are referred to as **ekar**, **akar**, **ikar**, **ukar**, and so on.

In all reading examples which follow, **ekar** consonant characters which occur in words having vowel characters or vowel signs should be realised according to the general rules already given, unless special notes are added.

1. See below, Ch.3. Classes 2. and 4. 2. For the use of vowel characters and vowel signs, see Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.1.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,2.1. 4. See above, Ch.1. The realisation of these vowel characters as **e** or **ə**, and as **o** or **ə**, is discussed below under 11. Vowel Signs.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. Vowel characters only. આ એ આઓ એઓ

2. Vowel characters with akar characters.

ઈસ ઊન એક આપ એઠ ઋણ આજ ઔઠ  
ઉચક ઈયળ ઊઠ એઠ ઔષધ ઔઘ ઉભડ ઈશ  
ઔડ મઠિ લઈ દઈ ગઈ જઈએ દઈએ લઈએ

ii. Vowel signs.

Vowel signs corresponding to each vowel character, except અ , are added to the akar form of the consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels a to eṽ . The vowel signs are given here added to the character ક .

કા	કિ	કી	કુ	કૂ	કૃ	કે	કૈ	કો	કૌ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke,ke	kəṽ	ko,ko	kəṽ

The order of strokes in writing characters with vowel signs is in general the same as that described in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. Some of the characters are modified in form when certain of the vowel signs are added.

a. The upright stroke of a character is written without rounding the foot when the vowel signs for u or uu are added:

ગુ	ગૂ	પુ	પૂ	સુ	સૂ
gu	guu	pu	puu	su	suu

b. Special forms:

જા	જિ	જી	જુ	જૂ	ણ	ર,રુ	ર,રુ	દ	ધ્ર	હ
ja	ji	jii	ju	juu	ṇu	ru	ruu	dr	ḍr	hr

1. For transcription of examples, see p.168.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2, 2.11.

In the teaching of writing in schools, and in spelling, the upright stroke of a character, and of the vowel signs corresponding to the characters આ , ઓ and ઔ are referred to as કાનો (kano), and the diagonal superscribed strokes in the vowel characters and signs, as in એ , ઐ , ઓ and ઔ , are referred to as માત્રા (matra). The vowel signs for ઇ and ઈ are called હ્રસ્વ ઇ (hresv i) and દીર્ઘ ઇ (diirgh ii), and the vowel signs for ઉ and ઊ are called હ્રસ્વ ઉ (hresv u) and દીર્ઘ ઊ (diirgh uu)<sup>1</sup>. Characters having vowel signs are described as 'akar', 'ukar', 'ekar' and so on.

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. One character words.

કે પૈ સૌ છે જા ધી તે ચા જે ભૂ થો જી

2. Words of two or more characters.

શેઠ રોજ ઠીક દૂધ લોક રૂપ ચીજ દઢ હિત જાય  
ગોક લાલ નહિ બહુ મને પછી આજે ઊભો ઉગે  
આપો ઋષિ ઋતુ સૌએ તેઓ ભાઈ છીએ જુઓ  
ઐરી ગોળો વારુ પૈસો મુકે રાજ પેલો દિવો કૃપા વિષે  
નિશાળે ઉજાણી રૂપિયો તાબેદારી હોશિયારી ભાઈઓએ

Realisation of the vowels એ and ઓ .

These vowel characters, and the corresponding vowel signs, each represent two vowels of different quality. The vowel character એ and the corresponding sign are realised in the majority of words as e , but in some words as ε ; the vowel character ઓ and the corresponding sign are realised in the majority of words as o , but in

1. hresv, 'short' ; diirgh, 'long'.

2. For transcription, see p.168.



some words as ડ. The realisation of these characters as e and o is described by Gujarati grammarians as વિવૃત (vivṛt, 'open'). Some pairs of words, written in the same way, are distinguished in meaning only by the realisation of the vowel ઓ as o or as ડ. Some words in frequent use in which these vowels are realised as 'open' vowels are given below; a fuller list of such words is given in the Gujarati dictionary 'Narmakosh'<sup>1</sup>, and in the dictionary 'Jodnikosh'<sup>2</sup> words in which the 'open' vowels occur are specially noted.

Words in which એ, or the corresponding sign, is realised as e :

એમ એલી કહે- કેડ કેદ કેમ કેરી ગેલ ઘેર ઘેલો છેન  
જેમ ઝેર ઢેલ તેમ દેશ નેમ પહેર-<sup>3</sup> પેર પેસ- પહેલો  
ફેણ બે બેઠ- બેઠક બેસ- બેન બહેન મેમાન મેર મેલ  
રહે- લે- લેણ લહેર વેપારી વેર વહેલો શહેર સહેજ સહેલો

Words in which ઓ, or the corresponding sign, is realised as o :

ઓગળ ઓછાડ ઓઝલ ઓસર- કોમલ કોપલો<sup>4</sup> કોગલો  
કોઠ કોડી કોણ કોલસો કોલિયો બોળો ગોળ ચોક<sup>5</sup>  
ચોપડી તો છોડ- છોડ છોલ છોળો છોળ- નોકર નોખો  
નોમ પહોળો પોણો<sup>6</sup> બો મોર મોવાળો મોસાળ મોળ  
રોક વહોર ચોક શોખ સો સોડ હો-

When characters with these vowels are written with the mark of nasalisation known as the anusvar<sup>7</sup>, they are realised as 'open' vowels.

1. નર્મકોશ, narmakos, pub.1873. 2. સાર્થ ગુજરાતી જોડણીકોશ sarthe gujeratii jodanli kos, pub.1949. The 'open' realisation of these vowel characters and signs is indicated in this dictionary by inverting the matra.
3. The words written with a hyphen are verbal bases. 4. In this and later words in which there are two okar characters, it is the first which is realised with ડ.
5. Similarly all words in which the first syllable is ઓ, 'four'.
6. Similarly other words in which the first syllable is પોણ-, 'less a quarter'.
7. See below, under 3. Modifiers, 1. anusvar.



Some words which are distinguished in meaning only by the realisation of ઓ as o or as ɔ :

ગોળ	gol, 'round'	ગૉળ, 'treacle'
ખોળ	khol, 'enquiry'	khૉળ, 'oil-cake'
ચોપડી	copəɽii, 'smeared'	cૉpəɽii, 'book'
કોણ	koŋ, 'angle'	kૉŋ, 'who'
ચોળી	coɽii, 'bodice'	cૉɽii, (name of a vegetable)
સોળ	soɽ, 'sixteen'	sૉɽ, 'weal', 'stripe'

Realisation of əkar consonant characters in words with vowel characters and signs in certain positions.

- a. When a medial əkar consonant character, in a three character word, is followed by a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, and the semi-vowels represented by ય and વ form diphthongs with the vowel of the preceding syllable, as in

એટલો	ચરબી	મણકો	ફાયદો	છેવટે
eɽ'lo	cər'bi	məŋ'ko	phay'do	chev'te

The realisation of medial əkar characters in words of more than three characters varies according to the position in each word of the characters with vowel signs. In compound words, the realisation depends upon the form of the words joined in the compound. The following examples illustrate the realisation of əkar consonant characters in such words.

Second characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

જેતકરી	કેટલાક	નુકસાન	જાનવર
jet'kerii	keɽ'lak	nuk'san	jan'ver

Other characters realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide:

દુકાનદાર	તાબડતોબ	કપટબાજ	પરવાનગી
dukan'dar	tabəɖ'tob	kəpəɖ'baʒii	pər'van'gii

- b. When a suffix beginning with a consonant character is added to a noun or pronoun, or to a verbal base, ending in an əkar consonant character, this final character is realised with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, as in these examples:

ગામનો	તમને	કરતો	બોલવા	લાગશે
gam-no	təm-ne	kər-to	bol-va	lag-ʃe

When such suffixes are added to verbal bases of three or more characters, of which the final and pre-final consonant characters are əkar, the realisation of the pre-final character varies in the way illustrated by the following examples:

સમજ	સમજ	સમજવા	સમજાવવા
səməj	səm'jii	səməj-va	səm'jav-va
યરક	યરકે	યરકતો	યરકાવવો
therək	thər'ke	therək-to	thər'kav-vo

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. əkar consonant characters realised as in note a.

એકઠા અપણે બકરી નકશે પોગાળી આજસુ કસબી  
પાયલી જમરુખ પાયદળ કોઠવાલ ગુજરાતી કસબચોર

2. əkar consonant characters realised as in note b.

છેતર છેતરે છેતરવી પકડ પકડો પકડવો  
પસર પસરીને પસરવી મોકલી મોકલવી

1. For transcription, see p.168.

Realisation of medial and final ૐ and ૡ .

The character ૐ is usually realised medially or finally as a flapped consonant,  $pa^1$ , except when preceded by a character written with the anusvar<sup>2</sup>. In some words, however, it is always realised as a stop,  $pa$ . The character ૡ is usually realised as a stop,  $pha$ , and sometimes as a flapped consonant. In some words the realisation as a stop is constant. The following examples are some of the words in frequent use in which ૐ and ૡ are always realised as stops<sup>3</sup>:

આડો ડિ- ઓડ કોડ ખાડો ગાડર ગાડી જોડો તીડ બુડ-લા  
લાવો હાડ આઠી ઓઠણ કાઠ- કાઠ ઠાઠી બુઠી વાઠ

These characters are always realised as stops after nasalisation.

In the following pairs of words the realisation of ૐ as  $pa$  or as  $pa$  is necessary for distinction of meaning:

પાડો	paḍo, 'male buffalo'	પારો, 'neighbourhood'
જાડું	jaḍu <sup>4</sup> , 'thick'	જાવું <sup>4</sup> , 'jaw'
વડો	vaḍo, 'cancelled'	વેરો, 'elderly'

Orthography of the 'short' and 'long' vowels.<sup>5</sup>

The following general rules are usually applied in writing the vowel characters ઈ , ઈ and ઊ , ઊ , and the corresponding vowel signs, though practice varies, and numerous exceptions occur.

a. ઈ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in final characters, or immediately preceding a final ekar consonant

- 
1. See note in 1.1. above.
  2. See below, under 3.1. anusvar.
  3. See Notes on Gujarati Phonology, T.N.Dave, Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies, Vol.VI.p.673 ff.
  4. For the mark of nasalisation on the final character of this word, see below, under 3.1.anusvar.
  5. Fuller notes on Gujarati orthography are given in 'Joḍnikosh', Introduction, p.30 ff.



character, unless this is a conjunct character<sup>1</sup>; e.g.

લઈ	કરી	પાણી	ઠીક	ચીજ	ગરીબ
lei	keri	pañi	thiik	cij	garib

ઈ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in all other positions<sup>2</sup>; e.g.

દિવસ	તિકત	બિલાડી	હોશિયાર	ઘડિયાળ
diveś	tikhet	bilaḍii	hoṣiyar	ghaḍiyaḷ

Some exceptions:

બીજો	હકીકત	લીધે	કીધો	શીખીને
biijo	hakiiket	liidhe	kiidho	ṣiikhiine

b. ઊ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in a medial position when immediately preceding a final ekar consonant character, unless this is a conjunct character; e.g.

ઊઠ	દૂધ	ભૂખ	ફૂલ	મજૂર
uṭh	duudh	bhuukh	phuul	majjur

ઉ , and the corresponding sign, are usually written in other positions, though many words occur in Gujarati texts written with either the 'short' or the 'long' vowel<sup>2</sup>; e.g.

ઉનાળો	દુકાન	સુથાર	વારુ	આપસુ
unaḷo	dukan	suthar	varu	aḷ'su

Some exceptions:

ઉચક	ઉપર	ઉભો	ફૂવો	સૂજ-
ucek	uper	ubho	kuvu	suujh-

The Sanskrit orthography is usually preserved in Sanskrit loan-words; e.g.

હિત	ભીતિ	પુરુષ	ભૂમિ	બહુ
hit	bhiiti	puruṣ	bhuumi	bahu

1. See below, Chapter 3.

2. For this vowel written with the anusvar, see below, under 3.1.



### 3. Modifiers.

The modifiers, **અનુસ્વાર** (anusvar) and **વિસર્ગ** (visarg), used in the Devanagari script, are both used in writing Gujarati.<sup>1</sup>

#### 1. anusvar.

The anusvar is a mark representing nasalisation, and is written in Gujarati in the form of a dot above a character, thus:

અં	આં	ઈં	ઉં	એં	ઑં	કાં	કિં	કું	કેં	કોં
am̐	aṃ	iṃ	uṃ	eṃ	oṃ	kaṃ	kiṃ	kuṃ	keṃ	koṃ

The anusvar is placed at the right side of any superscribed stroke, and it is written on the character after every other stroke, as in the Devanagari script.<sup>2</sup>

Realisation of the anusvar.

- a. The anusvar is realised in some words as the nasalisation of the vowel of the character with which it is written. This realisation occurs usually when the anusvar is written with any of the vowels **આ** to **ઔ**, except in some Sanskrit loanwords. The anusvar realised in this way occurs in many grammatical forms. Examples:

કંઈ	માં	ઈંટ	તું	ઉચ	મેં	પહોંચ	પૌંવા
kāi	mā	iṭ	tū	ūc	mē	pehōc	pāvva

Grammatical forms:

છોકરાં	બધાંએ	કેળું	મારું	જાઉં	આવું
chokerā	badhāe	keḷū	marū	jaū	av-vū

The 'long' vowels **ઈ** and **ઉ** are usually written in characters with the anusvar when it represents nasalisation of a vowel,

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1. and ii.

2. ibid., note on calligraphy of the anusvar.

except in grammatical forms described as 'neuter singular', which are always written with the 'short' vowel; e.g.

વીંછી	ભીંત	ઊંડો	મારું	લીંબું	ઊંડું
vīichī	bhīt	ūḍo	marū	lībū	ūḍū

Some words are written with either 'short' or 'long' vowels.

The vowel characters એ and ઓ, and the corresponding signs, are realised with the anusvar as ઈ and ઊ; e.g.

ખેંચવું	ભેંસ	સોંપવું	પહેંચવું
khēc-vū	bhēs	sōp-vū	pehōc-vū

- b. The anusvar written on a character preceding one of the vergiī characters may be realised as the nasal consonant of the same class as the following character, or as n before a character of the cə-verg. This realisation of the anusvar occurs mainly in reading Sanskrit loanwords. When the anusvar is realised as a nasal consonant before a final ēkar consonant character, the final character is usually realised with an ə-glide<sup>1</sup>. Examples:

કંઠ	શાંતિ	જંતુ	સંભાળ	સંબંધ
kaṇṭh	śanti	jentu	sambhaḷ	sambēdh

As in Sanskrit, there is an alternative method of representing nasal consonants in this context. This method is described later.<sup>2</sup>

The 'short' forms of the vowels ઈ and ઊ are usually written with the anusvar representing a nasal consonant; e.g.

લિંગ	ચિંતા	સુંદર	કુંભાર
ling	cinta	sunder	kumbhar

1. See above, 1.b. Realisation of ēkar consonant characters.  
2. See below, Ch.3,3.Class 2.ii.

c. When the anusvar is written on a character preceding an antesth or an uṣm character, as in Sanskrit loanwords and learned words used in the literary language, it is realised in various ways, according to the position of articulation of the following consonant. The realisation of the anusvar in these contexts by speakers in various parts of India is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

The usual Gujarati practice is illustrated by these examples:

anusvar before ય , realised as ય̣ , as in સંયોગ , saṇyog

anusvar before લ , realised as લ̣ , as in પુંલિંગ , puṇḍiṅg

anusvar before all other antesth and uṣm characters, realised

as વ̣ ; e.g. સંરક્ષણ વારંવાર અંશ અહિંસા સિંહ  
saṇrəkṣaṇ<sup>2</sup> vareṇvar aṇṣa ahiṇsa siṇh

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

1. anusvar realised as in note a.

શું હું કંઈ ભોય ફેંક ખેંચ સાંજ ઊઘ સીંચ ભેંસ  
બાંધ ઝાંખ તેવાંજ માંદું પહોંચ વિંદી થાઉ લીંબું

2. anusvar realised as in notes b. and c.

આનંદ જતુ વસંત મેંડ અંદર કંજુસ અંબા સંપ

#### 11. visarg

This modifier, described in the Sanskrit section<sup>4</sup>, does not occur in Gujarati words, but it occurs medially in a few Sanskrit loanwords and is realised as the doubling of the following consonant, as in દુઃખ , dukkh (also written દુખ , dukh) and અંતઃકરણ , antekkerṇ.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1.c.

2. ક્ષ represents k- joined with -ṣe . See Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.b.

3. For transcription, see p.169.

4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.11.



4. The Complete Syllabary.

The traditional order of the characters in the syllabic series is shown in the following table<sup>1</sup>:

અ	આ	ઇ	ઈ	ઉ	ઊ
	એ	ઐ	ઓ	ઔ	
	અં	અઃ			
ક	ખ	ગ	ઘ	ઙ	
ચ	છ	જ	ઝ	ઞ	
ટ	ઠ	ડ	ઢ	ણ	
ત	થ	દ	ધ	ન	
પ	ફ	બ	ભ	મ	
	ય	ર	લ	વ	
	શ	ષ	સ	હ	
		ળ			

The vowel character ઋ is not usually included in the table.

The table in which the vowel characters (except ઋ), and the modifiers added to the character અ, are placed at the head of a series of columns consisting of every consonant character in the akara form, with each of the vowel signs and each of the modifiers, is called in Gujarati the વારાખડી, barakhēḍī, the 'twelve characters'. This table is often recited in schools by children learning to read.

1. Cf. Devanagari table in Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 4.



These two tables show the order in which characters are placed as initial characters of words in dictionaries, which is the same as the order in Sanskrit, except that words beginning with characters with the anusvar are placed after words beginning with the same character without the anusvar, as illustrated below:

Sanskrit: a ai anya anja anhe ake akhe ...

Gujarati: a ai ake akhe ... aa ahe anke ankhe ...

### 5. Numerals.

The Gujarati numerals are written thus:

૧	૨	૩	૪	૫	૬	૭	૮	૯	૧૦
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

### 6. Punctuation.

In prose writing, the same system of punctuation is used as in English prose. The system used in Gujarati verse is the same as the Sanskrit system.<sup>1</sup>

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 6.

## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised without an intervening vowel. Characters formed by joining other characters are called સંયુક્તાક્ષર (sāyūktakṣar) by Gujarati grammarians or જોડાક્ષર (jodakṣar) in the teaching of writing in schools. The construction and calligraphy of conjunct characters in the Devanagari script is described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Gujarati conjunct characters are constructed by similar methods, with these modifications:

- i. Some conjunct characters are formed by writing two characters together, without the usual separating space, as in ક્ક , kke.
- ii. When conjunct characters are formed by omitting the upright stroke of the first character<sup>2</sup>, the remaining part of the first character is often written on a lower level than the first part of the second character, as in ગ્ગ , gge , બ્બ , bbe.

#### 1. Contexts of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

Conjunct characters occur in Gujarati in the following contexts:

- i. In Gujarati words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from modern languages; e.g.

ડાહ્યું	બેચું	નેક્કી	ચિટ્ઠી
ḍahyū	bēcū	nekki	ciṭṭhi

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,1.

2. *ibid.*, Ch.3,1.ii.

11. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Gujarati, or learned words used only in the literary language; e.g.

પુસ્તક  
pustek

પત્ર  
patr

ઈશ્વર  
iṣṭvēr

111. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

રેસ્ટો  
resto

ગાર્ડ  
gard

સ્ટેશન  
stēṣan

## 2. Realisation of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

Conjunct characters are realised in reading as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. When an ekar conjunct character occurs as the final character of a word, it is usually realised with an e-glide, as in જન્મ , jamm' , શાસ્ત્ર , jastr'.<sup>1</sup>

The realisation in modern Gujarati of ekar consonant characters with zero-vowel in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling. For instance, when a formative particle beginning with a consonant character is added to a verbal base ending in a final ekar consonant character, the final character of the base is realised with zero-vowel. This realisation of the consecutive characters is similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Similar problems arise in other contexts, where an ekar consonant character is realised with zero-vowel before a following consonant character, and in compound words in which the first part ends in an ekar consonant character and the second part begins with a consonant character. Examples of such words are given below with the various classes of conjunct characters.

1. See above, Ch.2,1.a. and b. This glide is not represented in the transcription of words to which this rule applies.



### 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Gujarati.

The conjunct characters used in writing Gujarati are classified in this chapter in the same way as the conjunct characters given in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Conjunct characters of all the classes occur in Gujarati, but in some of the classes only a few of the characters are used. Those which are used in writing Gujarati are shown by the examples given in each class, which include some Sanskrit loanwords in frequent use. Some of the reading examples given in the Sanskrit section occur in literary texts as learned loanwords, and these may be transcribed without difficulty in Gujarati characters.

#### Class 1. Two similar characters joined.<sup>2</sup>

Most of the characters of the Gujarati syllabary occur in this class, as 'doubled' characters. The character for -rra is written as ર્ર, the superscribed stroke representing r- preceding another consonant<sup>3</sup>.

A character representing an aspirated consonant is not usually written as the first part of a conjunct character in this class; but in Gujarati writing the characters ખખ્ખ, ક્ક, ત્ત, and દ્દ are often used. The combinations -nne and -mne are represented in some words by writing the anusvar over the character preceding ન or મ; e.g.

સંમતિ

sammati

સંનિધિ

sennidhi

but

અન્ન

ann

The following examples illustrate Gujarati words in which two consecutive consonant characters, the first being *ekar*, are realised

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.

2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 1.

3. See below, Class 3.iii.a.



in ordinary speech in the same way as conjunct characters:

આગાડી

ag-gaḍii<sup>1</sup>

ગામમાં

gam-mā<sup>2</sup>

ભાવું

bhav-vū<sup>3</sup>

બહેનનો

bēhn-no<sup>2</sup>

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

નક્કી લક્કડ ચોખ્ખો લગ્ન વચ્ચે બચ્ચું ઈચ્છા ગરછો સન્નહ  
ઉચ્છતી છુછો ભઠ્ઠી ચિઠ્ઠી ખડ્ડો પિત્તા પચ્ચર મુદ્દલ<sup>5</sup> બુઝિ<sup>5</sup>  
ઓછો અન્ન ચાખુ બબ્બો હિમ્મત રચ્ચત છેલ્લો હાંલ્લી હિસ્તો

#### Class 2. Two vergily characters joined.

The characters of this class occur for the most part in Sanskrit and other loanwords. Those which are most frequently used in writing Gujarati are given below, in the same groups as the characters given in the Sanskrit section<sup>6</sup>.

- |    |      |      |      |      |      |
|----|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. | કત   | તઠ   | પત   | ત્પ  | બઢ   |
|    | -kte | -tke | -pte | -tpe | -bde |

- ii. Most of the characters corresponding to those of this group in the Sanskrit section, under ii.a., are written in literary Gujarati, representing homorganic nasal consonants. This method of representing nasal consonants preceding vergily characters is generally used only in writing Sanskrit loanwords. An alternative method, representing nasal consonants of each class by writing the anusvar on the preceding character, has been described above<sup>7</sup>.

Of the characters given in the Sanskrit section under ii.b., only

झ, ज्ञ and ळ, -tne occur in Gujarati. The character झ

is not calligraphically a conjunct character and is often

1. Compound word. 2. Noun with suffix. 3. Verbal form.  
4. For transcription, see p.169. 5. The second character in these words is formed from the Devanagari character for de; Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.1.  
6. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.2. 7. See above, Ch.2,3.1.b.

included in the syllabary. In Gujarati dictionaries words beginning with ક્ષ are placed after words beginning with જો . ક્ષ is often realised as gya .

iii. Some of the characters of this group occur in Sanskrit loanwords:

કમે	ગને	ધને	તમે	ધમે	પને
-kme	-gne	-ghne	-tme	-dme	-pne

iv. Of this group, only નમે , -nme , occurs in Gujarati, though

કમે , -kme and ધમે , -dme may occur in learned loanwords in a literary text.

The following examples illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is akar, in the same way as conjunct characters:

શક્તિ	શક્તી	ગુપ્ત	આપતો
ʃəkti	ʃək-tii <sup>1</sup>	gupt	ap-to <sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

શુક્તિ ભક્તિ તત્કાલ ચમત્કાર ગુપ્ત તત્પર શબ્દ ચલ  
લભ રુકિમણી જન્મ રક્ષ સુન્દર પત્ન આરમ્ભ પરતુ  
સમ્યક્ જ્ઞાન

Class 3. Characters joined with antesth characters.

1. Characters joined with following ય .<sup>3</sup>

All the characters of the Gujarati syllabary, except ડ and જ occur in this class. Many of the characters occur in verbal forms in which the suffix યો , and other forms of this suffix, are added to the verbal base by joining the character of the suffix with the final character of the base.

1. Verbal form. 2. For transcription, see p.169.  
3. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.1.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

ક્યારે શક્યો ખ્યાલું નાખ્યો લાગ્યું મુઘ્યું સીંચ્યો પુઘ્યો  
 જ્યારે ખોજ્યું સૂઝ્યું છુટ્યો ઊઠ્યું પડ્યો કાઢ્યો ભાણ્યો  
 જીત્યો ત્યાં આપ્યું વિદ્યા શોધ્યો મધ્યે માન્યો ન્યાય ખ્યારે  
 આપ્યું હાંફ્યો કળ્યું યોભ્યું ગમ્યું સૂર્ય કર્યો બોલ્યો આન્યું  
 ભાન્યું અવશ્ય પીરસ્યું મનુષ્ય કલું માળ્યું નિકળ્યો અદૃશ્ય

ii. Characters joined with following વ .<sup>2</sup>

Only a few of the Gujarati characters are combined with વ , and these occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. The realisation of a final *ekar* consonant character in some compound words formed with the words વાલા, vala and વાર, var, illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is *ekar*, in the same way as conjunct characters of this class; e.g.

પક્વાન	અઠવાડિયું	ડાકવાલા	સોમવાર	બુધવાર
pekvaan	aṭh'vaḍiyū	ḍak'vala	som'var	budh'var

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

સત્ત્વ પૃથ્વી સર્વ ઈશ્વર<sup>4</sup> વિશ્વાસ સ્વભાવ  
 સ્વપ્ન દ્વેષ ધ્વનિ તત્ત્વજ્ઞાન

## iii. Characters joined with preceding ર or following ર .

a. ર preceding another character.<sup>5</sup>

These conjunct characters are formed by placing a stroke known as રેફ, reph, above the character before which ર is to be realised as the first of two or more consecutive consonants. The place of

1. For transcription, see p.169.

3. For transcription, see p.169.  
see Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.ii.

4. For the character રે, [e],  
5. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.



this stroke on Gujarati characters, whether *ekar* or written with vowel signs, corresponds with the place of the stroke on the Devanagari characters, and the order of writing the strokes of characters with reph is the same as the order described in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>.

The characters of this class which occur in Gujarati are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is *ekar*, in the same way as conjunct characters written with reph are realised:

કર્તા	કરતા	ધર્મ	ઘરમાં	વર્ણ	નિસરણી
kerta	kər-ta <sup>2</sup>	dharm	gher-mā <sup>3</sup>	vern	niser'ṇī

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

તર્ક મૂર્ખ વર્ગ અર્જિત ગર્જના વર્ણન પૂર્ણ વર્તન અર્થ  
વિદ્યાર્થી નિર્દય અર્ધુ અર્પણ ધર્મ દર્મિયાં ખર્વ પૂર્વ હર્ષ

b. ૨ following another character.

These characters are formed by writing a short diagonal stroke either against the upright stroke of a character, or below a rounded character.<sup>5</sup> Two characters similar to the Devanagari characters are used in forming these conjunct characters: *ઢ* for *de*, and *ઢ* for *je*.<sup>6</sup> The examples given below illustrate the characters of this class which occur in Gujarati, mostly in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

Reading examples<sup>7</sup>

ઠમ રાત્ર અંદ્ર સમુદ્ર પ્રેમ પ્રાણી તણ ત્રીજું શુક્રવાર  
શ્રમ શ્રાવણ આગ્રહ ત્રાંબું ઈંગ્રેજ નમ્ર પ્રમાણે ભ્રમર

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3. iii. a. Calligraphy. 2. Verbal form.  
3. Noun with suffix. 4. For transcription, see p. 169.  
5. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 3. iii. b. 6. *ibid.*, Ch. 2, 1. 1. and iii.  
7. For transcription, see p. 169.



iv. Characters with preceding લ or following લ .<sup>1</sup>

The characters of this class which are used in writing Gujarati are illustrated in the reading examples given below.

## a. લ preceding.

Characters with preceding લ are not usually written in Gujarati except in a few Sanskrit loanwords. Some words are written either with a conjunct character or with separate characters, such as બલકે , belke , or બલકે , bel'ke .

In representing colloquial speech forms in modern Gujarati, the character લે is sometimes written for લા, as in લેહર , lher , for લહેર , leher , and other similar words.

## b. લ following.

Characters combined with following લ occur mainly in Sanskrit and English loanwords.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar, in the same way as conjunct characters of this class:

બિહુલ	વળગણી	બદલી	આમલી
bil'kul	vel'ganī	bed'li	am'li

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

ફાલ્ગુન કલ્પના કોલ્હો કલ્હી સ્વલ્પ શિલ્પ  
પ્રલ્હાદ શ્લોક ક્લેશ ક્લાસ ગ્લાસ સ્લેટ

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iv.a. and b.

2. For transcription, see p. 169.

Class 4. vergiily characters joined with preceding or following unṣm characters.

1. vergiily characters joined with ર્શ, ષ્ or સ્.<sup>1</sup>

a. ર્શ, ષ્ or સ્ preceding a vergiily character.

The characters of this class which occur in Gujarati, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are illustrated by the examples given below. The formation of the characters is similar to the formation of the Devanagari characters of this class, using the form ર્શ<sup>2</sup> for ર્શ, and using the form ષ્<sup>3</sup> for ષ્ when combined with ર્શ.

b. ષ્ or સ્ following a vergiily character.

Only a few of the Gujarati characters occur in this class. Those which occur are illustrated in the examples below. The character

ક્ષ, kṣe, is not calligraphically a conjunct character and is often included in the Gujarati varṇamālā.<sup>4</sup> Words beginning with this are placed in Gujarati dictionaries after words beginning with ક્ષ.

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ēkar, in the same way as conjunct characters:

નુક્સાન	નાસતો	ભેંસનો	દિવસમાં
nuk'san	nas-to <sup>5</sup>	bhēs-no <sup>6</sup>	dives-mā <sup>7</sup>

The character સ્હે is written in some words for સહે to represent the pronunciation in modern Gujarati of such words as સહેલ, sehēl (સહેલ), and સહેજ, sṛhej (સહેજ).

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.i.a. and b. 2. Ibid., Ch.2,1.111.  
3. Ibid., Ch.2,1.1. ce-vergeh. 4. Cf.note on ક્ષ, under Cl.2.11.b.  
5. Verbal form. 6. Noun with suffix. 7. Noun with particle.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

- a. મશ્કરી પશ્ચિમ અશ્મા પશ્ચાન્નાપ આશ્ચર્ય દુષ્ટ સ્પષ્ટ  
પુષ્કળ દુષ્કર્મ રાષ્ટ્ર વસ્તુ રસ્તો પુસ્તક શાસ્ત્ર સ્ત્રી  
સ્પળ સ્પિતિ તિરસ્કાર સંસ્કૃત સ્મરણ રાસ્ત
- b. પરીક્ષા રક્ષણ અક્ષર લક્ષ્મણ કૃષ્ણ અખસરા ઈન્સાફ

ii. હ preceding or following anunasik ('nasal') characters<sup>2</sup>.

a. હ preceding.

Two characters occur with preceding હ, in the Sanskrit loan-words બ્રાહ્મણ, brahman, and ચિહ્ન, cihn

b. હ following.

The characters which occur with following હ are illustrated in the examples given below. The characters નહ and મહ are sometimes written to represent the tendency to aspiration in some words in colloquial speech.

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

નહાવું સામ્હે [સામે] તમ્હે [તમે]

Gujarati prose passage<sup>4</sup>

જોડણી શાસ્ત્રપૂત હોય, બહોળી શિષ્ટ રીતિને અનુસરતી હોય, એ બધું જેટલું આવશ્યક છે તેટલું જ, અથવા તેના કરતાંયે, જેવી હોય તેવી પણ જોડણી બહુજનમાન્ય અને નિશ્ચિત થઈ જાય, એ વધારે આવશ્યક છે. આજે અંગ્રેજ ભાષાની જોડણી બધી રીતે શાસ્ત્રશુદ્ધ છે એમ તો કહેવાય જ નહિ; કેટલીયે બાબતમાં

1. For transcription, see p.169.

2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3. Class 4.11.

3. For transcription, see p.170.

4. Sārtha Jōḡnikośh, by Maganlal

Prabhudās Desāi, 4th ed. 1949, p.16, pub. Navajīvan Prakāśhan  
Mandir, Ahmedabad.



એ ઢંગધડા વગરની છે. પણ તે પ્રજામાં સંગઠન તથા તાલીમ-  
બદ્ધતા હોવાને લીધે ત્યાં જોડણીમાં અસાજકતા ફેલાવા પામી  
નથી. અંગ્રેજ ભાષાની જોડણી સર્વમાન્ય થઈ ચુકી છે, તેથી  
જોડણીની બાબતમાં બધે એકધારું લખાણ જડી આવે છે. એક  
વાર અસાજકતામાંથી બચવા ઉત્પન્ન થઈ ગઈ એટલે પછી  
સુધારા કરવા જ હોય તો તે કામ પ્રમાણમાં થણું સહેલું થઈ  
જાય છે.

સુધારાનો પ્રવાહ માન્ય વિકલ્પોની મર્યાદામાં જ વહી શકે  
છે. વખત જતાં વિકલ્પોમાં અમુક જાતની જોડણી જ વધારે  
ફેલાય છે અને બીજા વિકલ્પો અવમાન્ય ન હોય તોપણ  
વપરાશને આપાવે કાલઝસ્ત થઈ જાય છે અને ખરી પડે છે.



Transcription of Reading ExamplesChapter 2.

- 1.i.        ne        che        je        dhe
- ghen    peg        nekh    gej        ced    meth    kekha    bhen    cheth    dheg  
jhet    gheq    dhen    tek        theq    dem    ben    phet    jed    pen
- beden    paked    jhedep    meded    cemen    phetek    teged    gemen  
jemen    beged    neged    dhemek    depet    tenekh    bhejen    pethen
- dhed'pen    bhet'ken    cek'mek    jhet'pet    bed'chet    gej'ken
- 1.ii.    reth    per    lekha    gher    khel    ber    raj    rav    leg    vey  
yev    ley    cher    jhel    ver    red    kel    cay    bher    jey
- lecak    cheler    veredh    jheren    bhered    vekhet    raten    tereph  
reved    vered    legen    yaven    cerek    pelakh    paven    bheren
- kel'ter    leg'bheg    ped'ter    led'ken    ter'tej    deph'ter
- 1.iii.    ras    seth    sedh    sen    has    des    yes    ser    set
- lesen    halek    seres    herekh    sepeth    semey    haren    phanes
- sem'jen    ser'bet    ser'ket    kes'ret    her'ket    veket'ser
- phel    del    hel    belad    dhevel    kemel    per'vel    hel'ket
- 2.i.        a        e        ao        eo
- is        uun        ek        ap        edh        rn        aj        evth  
uucak    iyel        uuth    eth        evsedh    ogh    ubhed    iij  
eyd        meu        leii    dei        geii        jeie    deie    leie
- 2.ii.    ke        pey    sev    che    ja    ghii    te    ca    je    bhuu    dho    jii
- seth    roj        thiik    duudh    lok        ruup    ciij    drqh    hit    jay  
god    lav        nehi    behu    mene    pechii    aje    uubho    uge  
apo    rsi        rtu    seve    teo        bhail    chile    juo  
beyrii    go        varu    peyso    muke    rajii    pelo    divo    krpa    vise  
nifale    ujanii    ruupiyo    tabedarii    hojiyarii    bhaice
- p.149.    ek'tha    ap'ne    bek'rii    nek'fo    pog'lii    al'su    kas'bii  
pay'lii    jem'rukha    pay'del    kot'val    guj'ratii    keseb'cor
- cheter    chet're    cheter-vii    paked    pek'do    paked-vo  
peser    pes'rine    peser-vii    mok'lii    mokel-vii

3.1. fū hū kṣii bhṣy phēk khēc sāj ūgh sīc bhās  
 bādḥ jhākh tevāj mādū pēhōc vīṭii thau lībū  
 11. anend jentu vēsent mēṇḍ ēnder kēnjus ēmba sēmp

## Chapter 3.

## Class 1.

nakkii lēkkēḍ cōkkho lēggu vēcce bēccū iccha gēccho sējjeḍ  
 ujjhetii chuṭṭo bhēṭṭii ciṭṭhii khēḍḍo pittēḷ pēṭṭhēr muddēḷ buddhi  
 oddho ēnne cēppu bēbbe himmet reyyēt chello hāllii hisso

## Class 2.

jukti bhēkti tētkal cēmetkar gupt tēṭṭēr jēbd yetn  
 lēgn rukmiṇii jēnm rēṅḡ sunder pēnth arēmbh pērentu  
 sēmbēndh jṇan

## Class 3.1.

kyare jēkyo khyalū ṇākhyo lagyū sughyū sīcyo puchyo  
 jyare khojyū suujhyū chuṭyo uṭhyū pēdyo kaḍhyo bhēnyo  
 jīityo tyā athyū vidya jōdhyo mēdhye manyo nyay pyare  
 apyū hāphyo dēbyū thōbhyyū gēmyū suury keryo bolyo avyū  
 bhavyū ēvēṣy pīr'syū mēnuṣy kēhyū mālyū nikēlyo ēdrjy

## Class 3.11.

settṭ prthvii sērv iṭṭvēr vijvas svēbhav  
 svēpn dvēḷ dhvēni tēṭṭvējṇan

## Class 3.111,

a. tērk muurkh vērg ērjit gērjēna vērnēn puurn vērtēn ērth  
 vidyarthii nirdēy ērdhū ērpēṇ dhērm dērmīyā khērv puurve hēṣ  
 b. krēm ratr cēndr sēmuḍr prēm prāṇii trēṇ trīijū jukrēvar  
 jrēm jrāvēṇ agrēhē trābū ingrējii nēm̄r prēmāṇē bhērēm̄r

## Class 3.1v.

phalgun kēlpēna kolha kēlḥēii svēlp jīlp prēlhad  
 jlok klēḷ klas glas slēḷ

## Class 4.1.

a. mēḷkerii pēscim cēṣma pēscattap aḷcēry duṣṭ spēṣṭ  
 puṣkēḷ duṣkērm rāṣṭr vēstu resto pustēk jāstr strīl sthēḷ  
 sthiti tīrēskar sēmskrt smērēṇ rast  
 b. pēriikṣa rēkṣēṇ ēkṣēr lēkṣmēṇ krṣṇ ēpsēra insaph

Class 4.11.

nhavū samhe (same) tamhe (same)

Gujarati prose passage

jodanīi jastrepunt hoy, behanīi jist rūdhdhine enuseratīi hoy, e  
 bedhd jēt'li avajyak che tēt'li j, ethava tana ker'tāye, jevīi hoy  
 tevīi peṇ jodanīi behujanamany ene nijcit theīi jay, e vedhare avajyak  
 che. aje engrejīi bhaganīi jodanīi bedhīi riite jastrejuddh che em  
 to kehavayo j nahi; keṭ'liye babet-mā e dhenghedheḍa veger-nīi che.  
 peṇ te prajā-mā sangēṭhen tatha taliim'bedheta havane liidhe tyā  
 jodanīi-mā erajeketa phelava pami nethīi. engrejīi bhaganīi jodanīi  
 saramany theīi cukīi che, tethīi jodanīinīi babet-mā bedhe ek'dhard  
 lekhar jodīi ave che. ek var erajeketa-māthīi vyavastha utpann theīi  
 geīi eṭ'le pochīi sudhara kerva j hoy to te kam preman-mā gherū sehald  
 theīi jay che.

sudharano prevahe many vikelpnīi meryada-mā j vahīi jake che.  
 vakhet jātā vikelpo-mā emuk jāt-nīi jodanīi j vedhare rūdhd thay che  
 ene biija vikelpo avamany na hoy topeṇ voparaj-na ebhave kalagrast  
 theīi jay che ene kharīi peḍe che.

# BENGALI SECTION

PREPARED IN COLLABORATION WITH  
MISS G. M. SUMMERS

*formerly Lecturer in Bengali in the  
School of Oriental and African Studies  
University of London*





## CHAPTER 1

### ARRANGEMENT OF THE SYLLABARY

The Bengali script, as a writing system, is based on the same syllabic system as the Devanagari script. The characters of the syllabary are arranged in the same way, and though the majority of the characters seem at first sight to be very different in line and form from those of the Devanagari script, some of them are recognisably of the same origin.

The same system of notation is used in this section for the transcription of the Bengali script as that used in the Sanskrit section, and in the transcription of the modern languages which are written with the Devanagari script. As in the Devanagari script, each character of the Bengali script represents a syllable consisting either of a vowel or of a consonant followed by the first vowel of the vowel series. This vowel, in Bengali as in Sanskrit, is usually referred to in English textbooks as the 'inherent' vowel. In referring to a consonant character of the Bengali syllabary, or in reciting the syllabary, the inherent vowel is, however, the vowel which is usually represented by the phonetic symbol 'ə'. In order to preserve uniformity in the systematic transcription throughout this work the symbol 'ə' is used in this section to represent the inherent vowel, and as there are various other differences in the quality of vowel sounds used in realising the Bengali characters, the systematic transcription

in this section is accompanied, both in the examples given in the text and in those given for practice in reading, by a phonetic transcription. The phonetic transcription is given in brackets to distinguish it from the systematic roman transcription.

In the roman syllabary given below, the syllables are represented in the table in the systematic transcription used in the Sanskrit syllabary. For the transcription of certain additional characters which do not occur in the Sanskrit syllabary, and for the phonetic transcription, the following symbols, not included in the All-India Roman Notation, are used in this section:-

#### 1. Systematic roman notation.

ꣳ and ꣳe , for the retroflex flapped consonants, represented in the script by modified forms of the characters corresponding to ḍa and ḍhe<sup>1</sup>.

ye , for the modified form of the character corresponding to ya , and realised in various ways, described in Chapter 2.<sup>2</sup>

ṃ , for the modifier referred to as the anusvar.<sup>3</sup>

#### 11. Phonetic notation.

(ɔ), for the realisation of the inherent vowel in most contexts.

(æ), for the realisation, in certain contexts, of the vowel transcribed in roman notation as a ; and for the realisation, in special contexts, of the vowel transcribed as e .

(~), superscribed to vowel symbols, to represent nasalisation.

('), to represent the realisation of the inherent vowel, medially, as an e-glide, or as zero-vowel, in certain positions.

1. See Ch.2,1.1.

2. ibid., 1.11. antestha ye.

3. See Ch.2,3.11.

## Bengali Syllabary in Roman Notation

CONSONANTS with ə			1 Velar	2 Palatal	3 Retro- flex	4 Dental	5 Labial
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	kə	cə	ʈə	tə	pə
		Aspirated	khə	chə	ʈhə	thə	phə
	Voiced	Unaspirated	gə	jə	ɖə <sup>1</sup>	də	bə
		Aspirated	ghə	jhə	ɖhə <sup>1</sup>	dhə	bhə
	Nasal		ŋə	(ɲə) <sup>2</sup>	ɳə	nə	mə
Semivowels				yə <sup>3</sup>	rə	lə	və <sup>4</sup>
Fricatives				ʃə	ʂə <sup>5</sup>	sə	
Aspirate			hə				
VOWELS		ə    a	i    ii	u    uu	e    əʏ	o    əʋ	r <sup>6</sup>
MODIFIERS		Nasal - ŋ    and    -    Aspirated - h					

Notes on the syllables marked 1 - 6 in the above table:

1. The characters corresponding to these two syllables are modified to represent the medial and final realisation of these characters as flapped sounds, written as pə and phə in the transcription.
2. The character corresponding to this syllable is not written as a single character in Bengali, but only in combination with other characters, illustrated below in Chapter 3.



3. As the character corresponding to this syllable is always realised in the same way as the character corresponding to *je* , a modified form of it is used to represent *ye* in certain contexts. The use of this modified character, referred to as 'antesthe *ye*', and transcribed in this work as *ye* , is discussed in Chapter 2.2.11.
4. The character corresponding to this syllable is the same as the character corresponding to the syllable *be* .
5. The character corresponding to this syllable occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.
6. This vowel, syllabic *r* , occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The characters of the Bengali script are arranged in the same groups as the syllables given in the above table, and the terms used by Bengali grammarians in describing the characters and their realisation in reading are similar to those given in the Sanskrit section. These terms are Sanskrit loanwords, and when they are realised in reading, the same conventions are observed as those used in modern Bengali reading from a text. They sound, therefore, somewhat different from the Sanskrit terms, though when the Sanskrit and the Bengali terms are placed side by side, they are recognisable as loanwords. The following examples illustrate the similarities and differences between the two sets of terms, in script and in systematic and phonetic transcription:

Sanskrit	अक्षरम्	ekṣaṛam	Bengali	অক্ষর	ekṣara, (akkkhor)
	विरामः	viramaḥ		বিরাম	virama (biram)
	वर्गः	vergaḥ		বর্গ	verga (borgo)
	अन्तःस्थ	antasthe		অন্তস্থ	antasthe (ontostho)
	ऊष्मन्	uṣman		উষ্ম	uṣma (uffṣ)
	व्यञ्जनम्	vyañjanam		ব্যঞ্জন	vyañjana (buanjon)

## Bengali Calligraphy.

In the modern teaching of Bengali writing, ordinary pens are generally used, and consequently little attention is paid to the balance or direction of the broad and thin strokes. Formerly, however, writing was taught with a broad pen such as that described in the notes on calligraphy in the Sanskrit section<sup>1</sup>. Though the relative position of the broad and thin strokes is not so strictly adhered to in writing Bengali as in writing the Devanagari script, the general direction of them is the same as that illustrated in those notes.

There is a conventional order of writing the strokes in each character; the first stroke in writing most of the characters begins at the top left hand side and the last stroke brings the pen to the top right hand side so that it is possible to pass straight on to the beginning of the next character. If a character has a horizontal head-stroke, or is completed with a short horizontal stroke at the top right hand side, this stroke is written last and carried on to the first stroke of the next character in a word; when such a stroke is placed on the left hand side of the character, it is written first. This head-stroke is referred to as the 'matra'. The pen should be lifted as rarely as possible in writing a character, or consecutive characters. All the characters are written below the line, if ruled paper is used, and the regular alignment is by the top of the characters.

The printed forms of the characters, given in the tables in Chapter 2, are not usually used in manuscript. The corresponding cursive forms of the characters, used in writing, are given below the

---

1. See Sanskrit section, Introduction.

printed forms, with notes on calligraphy when necessary. The examples given below illustrate the general order of strokes in writing the characters, some typical forms, and the small but important differences to be noted between characters which have some similarity of form.

1.	ব।	—	ব	ব	য।	২	য	য	
	ট।	৮	ট	ট	উ।	৬	ড	উ	
2.	ব	র	ক	কু	কু	ঝ	য	ষ	ফ
	ঢ	ঢ	ট	চ	ঠ	এ	ক্র	ক্র	ঞ
	ড	উ	ড	জ	ঙ	হ	ই	থ	ঈ
	ত	অ	ন্ত	ন্ত	ন্ত	ন্ত	ন্ত	ন্ত	ন্ত
	দ	বা	দ্ব	দ্ব	ব	ল	হ	থ	প্র
			ক	ম	দ	ক	ক	ক	ক



## CHAPTER 2

### CHARACTERS OF THE SYLLABARY

The Bengali characters are described in this chapter under the same headings as the Devanagari characters in the Sanskrit section: Consonant Characters, Vowel Characters and Signs, and Modifiers.<sup>1</sup>

#### 1. Consonant Characters.

The consonant characters are arranged in three groups: *vergiiya* (*borgiyo*) characters, *entestha* (*ontostho*) characters, and *ugma*(*uḥṣṭa*) characters. In the form in which they are given in the syllabary, they are realised as syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by the first vowel of the vowel series, represented in the roman table as *e*. The characters are described as 'ekar' (*ekar*), that is, 'ending in *e*'. Each character is referred to as the syllable which it represents, with the addition of the particle '-kar'; for example, *ke-kar*, *te-kar*, *pe-kar*. When a character is to be realised without the inherent vowel, that is, as the consonant element of the syllable only, a short diagonal stroke is written at the foot of the character. This mark is called 'hesante' (*hoṣanto*)<sup>2</sup>, and characters written with this mark are referred to thus: क is 'ke-e hesante' (*ke-e hoṣanto*)<sup>3</sup>, ग is 'ge-e hesante' (*ge-e hoṣanto*), and so on. In reading words, *ekar* consonant characters are realised in various

---

1. Compare Sanskrit section, Chapter 2.

2. 'ending in a consonant'. Cf. Sanskrit Ch.2.1. *viraṃśa* and *hoṣanto*.

3. 'hesante in ke'. See also below, under 1.



contexts with zero-vowel, but the hesante is not usually written with such characters in modern Bengali, as it is assumed that the reader can recognise from a knowledge of the spoken language which characters are to be realised in this way. In some verbal forms<sup>1</sup>, however, the hesante is often written with characters that are realised with zero-vowel, and it is used in writing Sanskrit texts in Bengali script.<sup>2</sup>

The absence of the hesante in a consonant character cannot, however, be taken to indicate that the character is to be realised with the inherent vowel. Although the writing system of Bengali has much in common with the Sanskrit writing system, owing to its origin, the use of a system so closely related to the Sanskrit system for writing a modern spoken language makes necessary a number of conventions both of spelling and of realising the characters in reading. Some of these conventions concern the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters. The Bengali consonant characters, as they are given in the syllabary, are realised, as described above, in the same way as the Sanskrit characters. When they occur in words, however, they are realised in various ways: as consonants with the inherent vowel, as consonants with zero-vowel, or as consonants with a glide-vowel. Further, the inherent vowel, represented in the systematic roman notation by *a*, is realised in some contexts as (ɔ) and in others as (o). This varying realisation of *ekar* consonant characters depends upon certain factors of which a general indication is given in the notes following the first table of consonant characters<sup>3</sup> and in special notes in the discussion

1. These verbal forms are discussed below, under 11.

2. Rules recognised by the University of Calcutta concerning the writing of the hesante are given in the Bengali dictionary চলন্তিকা (calontika), appendix, page 38, sub-section 4.

3. See below, under 1., Realisation of *ekar* consonant characters.

of vowel characters and vowel signs<sup>1</sup>; but in reading a Bengali text the realisation of these characters in many words can be determined only by a knowledge of the spoken language.

1. Characters of the *vergliye* group ( বর্ণীয় )<sup>2</sup>

This group consists of twentyfive consonant characters representing syllables consisting of an initial plosive consonant followed by the inherent vowel. These characters fall into five classes, বর্ণ , *verge*<sup>3</sup>, according to the five positions of articulation. The table of these five classes may be compared with the Sanskrit table of *vergliye* consonant characters.

ক - বর্ণ ka-verge <sup>4</sup>	ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঙ
	ka	khe	ga	ghe	-ṅa
চ - বর্ণ ca-verge	চ	ছ	জ	ঝ	ঞ
	ca	che	ja	jhe	-ṇa
ট - বর্ণ ṭa-verge	ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ণ
	ṭa	ṭhe	ḍa	ḍhe	-ṇa
ত - বর্ণ ta-verge	ত	থ	দ	ধ	ন
	ta	the	da	dhe	na
প - বর্ণ pa-verge	প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম
	pa	phe	ba	bhe	ma

1. See below, under 2.11.

2. (*borgiyo*). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2.

1.1. 3. (*borgo*). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2, 1.1. 4. (*ko-borgo*, etc.).

The characters given in this table are those used in printing. The corresponding cursive forms, used in handwriting, are given below. The cursive forms differ from the printed forms mainly in an adaptation of the order and direction of strokes that makes it possible to join each character to the following character by means of a small head-stroke<sup>1</sup>. The order of strokes is given with any character in which this order is not evident from the form of the character itself.

ka-verge:	ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঙ
ca-verge:	চ	ছ	জ	ঝ	ঞ
te-verge:	ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ণ
ta-verge:	ত	থ	দ	ধ	ন
pa-verge:	প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম

Calligraphy of characters:

ka	ক	খ	গ	che	চ	ছ	জ	ঙ	ঞ
jha	জ	ঝ	ঞ	the	ট	ঠ	pe	প	ফ
dhe	দ	ধ	or	ব	ভ	ম			

Calligraphy of words:

নদ টকা খড় পথ বন তট ঘন জড় তত  
ফটকা কতক জগৎ বচনচ গড়গড় চপট

Characters written with the hasante: ক, k-, ঙ, ণ-, ম, m-.

The hasante is not written with ত, ta. The consonant t- without a following vowel is represented as ঞ. This character is referred to as খণ্ড ত, khande ta(khande to).<sup>2</sup>

1. See notes on calligraphy, Ch.1. 2. (khande to), 'broken ta'.



The character **ঙ**, *ṅe*, does not occur initially, but it occurs medially and finally in a few Bengali words and is often written with the hesents.

The character **ঞ**, *ṇe*, occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, in combination with other characters<sup>1</sup>.

The character **ণ**, *ṇe*, is realised as (ṅ), except when it is combined with characters of the *ṭe*-verge<sup>2</sup>. It occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords, and never initially.

The character **ফ**, *pho*, is usually realised as a bi-labial fricative. When stressed, it is usually realised as a plosive.

The character **ভ**, *bhe*, is usually realised as a plosive when initial, but as a bi-labial fricative when medial or final.

The two characters **ড**, *ḍe* and **ঢ**, *ḍhe* occur only initially. Modified forms of these characters occur medially and finally. These characters, **ড্**, *ḍe* and **ঢ্**, *ḍhe* are described as ড় শূন্য ড্, *ḍe-e* *ṣuunye* *ḍe*<sup>3</sup>. They are usually placed at the end of the *vernemala*, being regarded as separate characters from **ড** and **ঢ**.

Realisation of the inherent vowel in *ekar* consonant characters.<sup>4</sup>

The realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in various ways, according to the position of the character in a word, and in special phonetic contexts, follows certain general rules. Some of these contexts can be defined only by a detailed phonetic study of the spoken language, and numerous exceptions occur. The rules stated below will, however, give some general guidance for reading.

1. See Ch.3,3.Class 2.11.b. 2. *ibid.*, Class 2.11.a.  
3. (*ḍe-e* *ṣuunye* *ḍe*), 'in *ḍe* a dot, *ḍe*', i.e. the *ḍe* written by adding a dot to *ḍe*. 4. Further notes on the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in special contexts are given below, under iii., and under 2.11.



## a. Initial ekar consonant characters.

An initial ekar consonant character is usually realised with the vowel (o), as in গাছ , gac(gao), কন্ , kab(kob), unless the character is followed by a final nasal consonant character, when the initial ekar character is usually realised with the vowel (o), as in জন , jen(jon).

b. Medial ekar consonant characters.<sup>1</sup>

1. Medial ekar consonant characters in words of three characters, of which the final is ekar, are usually realised with the vowel (o), as in কদম্ , kadam(kadom), নগদ্ , neged(negod)<sup>2</sup>.

ii. Medial ekar consonant characters as the second character of a four character word, are often realised with zero-vowel, or with an e-glide, as in চকমক্ , cekemake(cok'mok)<sup>3</sup>. Two consecutive ekar consonant characters are not usually both realised with the vowel (o).

## c. Final ekar consonant characters.

1. Final ekar consonant characters are realised in many words with zero-vowel, as in চট্ , cete(cot), কব্ , kabə(kob).<sup>5</sup>

ii. Final ekar consonant characters are realised in some words with the vowel (o). This realisation occurs in words of certain

1. This note refers to words consisting of ekar consonant characters only; further notes are given below, under 2.ii., for the realisation of these characters in words in which vowel signs occur.
2. See S.K.Chatterji, ভাষাপ্রকাশ বাঙ্গালী ব্যাকরণ , bhasaprekasa bangala vyakherana, pp.32ff.; pub. Calcutta University, 1939.
3. For the method used in the phonetic transcription of medial and final characters in words to which these notes refer, see above, Ch.1., and below, after note c.
4. For the realisation of ekar characters in compound words, see note c. below.
5. Final characters realised with zero-vowel are not usually written with the hesente. This mark is used in notes a. and b. to simplify the transcription of examples occurring before the realisation of final characters is discussed.

grammatical categories, summarised later<sup>1</sup>; and in certain other words, usually words of two characters, which can be recognised only by a knowledge of spoken Bengali. e.g. কত , kete(koto). তম , tame(tomo). When such words occur as the first part of a compound word, the final character, though medial in the compound word, is still realised in this way.<sup>2</sup>

The word মত , mete , is realised in two ways, the same written form representing two words of different meaning in the spoken language: মত , (mat), 'idea', 'opinion', or 'purpose', and মত , (moto), 'similar', 'like'.

As the realisation of ekar consonant characters with the vowels (ɔ) and (o) varies not only in the contexts described above, but also in some other contexts which are described later<sup>3</sup>, and some which cannot be defined by any general statement, the following system is used in the phonetic transcription of examples in this work:

- a) Initial ekar consonant characters are transcribed with (ɔ) or with (o), according to note a. above.
- b) Medial ekar consonant characters realised as a syllable with the inherent vowel are transcribed with (ɔ) or with (o), according to note b. above; those realised with zero-vowel or with an e-glide are transcribed thus: (k'), (p').
- c) Final ekar consonant characters realised with zero-vowel are transcribed as final consonants; those which are realised with the vowel (o) are transcribed with (o), according to note c.<sup>4</sup>

---

1. See below, under iii.      2. For examples of such compound words, see below, under ii. Reading examples.  
 3. Further notes on the realisation of ekar consonant characters are given below, under iii. and under 2.ii. Vowel Signs.  
 4. Variations from these general rules may occur in certain words, but such variations are outside the scope of this work.

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. One character words, realised as consonants with the vowel (o).

ক ছ ন প দ ঢ জ ট ত থ থ

2. Two character words.

1. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

নদ নখ টক পদ খড় ঝড় ঘট পথ তট

- ii. Final characters realised with (o):

কত বড় ঘন পট গত পত জড় নত তত

- iii. Initial characters realised with (o), final with zero-vowel:

বন জন মন কণ

3. Three character words; realised as in note b.i. and c.i.

ফটক কতক জগৎ ঘটক

4. Four character words; realised as in note b.ii. and c.i.

চটপট কটকট কচমচ ঢকমক খটখট  
থকথক গড়গড় টপটপ তকতক ধপধপ

- ii. Characters of the *antastha* group( অন্তস্থ )<sup>2</sup>

There are four characters in this group, associated with four of the *verge*, as shown in the roman syllabary<sup>3</sup>. They may be compared with the Devanagari characters of the corresponding group<sup>4</sup>.

য	র	ল	ব
ye	re	le	ve

Cursive forms:

য র ল ব

Words: রাম যত বছর বলম মলম ফলবায়

1. For transcription, see p.226.

2. (*antastha*).

3. See roman table, Chapter 1.

4. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.11.



The character য , transcribed in the roman notation as ye , is realised as (jo). It corresponds, as the first character in this group, to the antesthe character य , ya , in the Sanskrit syllabary. It is referred to as 'antesthe ye'(ontostho jo), to distinguish it from জ , ja , referred to as 'vergiiye je'(borgiyo jo). The semi-vowel corresponding to the Sanskrit character य is represented in Bengali by a modified form of this character. য় , referred to as 'antesthe ye'(ontostho o). This character is realised in various ways according to its position and phonetic context, and is discussed later in a special note<sup>1</sup>.

The character ব , transcribed in the roman notation as ve , is realised as (bo). It corresponds, as the fourth character in this group, to the antesthe character व , va , in the Sanskrit syllabary. It is referred to in this work as 'antesthe ve'(ontostho bo) in order to distinguish it, in discussion, from the third character in the pe-verge, 'vergiiye be'(borgiyo bo). Although vergiiye be and antesthe ve are the same in form and in realisation, the character is included in the syllabary in both the vergiiye and the antesthe groups, and Sanskrit loanwords which are written in the Devanagari script with initial व , va , are placed in Bengali dictionaries in a separate section following words with initial ব্ৰ , le . A knowledge of Sanskrit loanwords is needed in order to recognise which words are to be found among words beginning with vergiiye be and which among those beginning with antesthe ve . In the more modern Bengali dictionaries the tendency is to place all words beginning with this character in one section, after words beginning with ফ , phe .

---

1. See note on antesthe ye , under 2.ii. below.



antasthe va is, however, recognised as different from vargiyā be when it is combined with another character.<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. Of the antasthe characters, only য occurs as a word.
2. Two character words.

1. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

কল ঘর মল পর বল রক দল রথ ফল

ii. Final character realised with (o):

যত

3. Three character words.<sup>3</sup>

বদল গলদ মলজ নগর গলন

4. Four character words.<sup>4</sup>

খরতর ফলকর কলরব

iii. Characters of the uṣṣma group( উষ )<sup>5</sup>

This group of characters includes three characters realised as fricative consonants with the vowel (o), and one character realised as an aspirate with the vowel (o). The characters are associated with four of the verge, as shown in the roman syllabary.<sup>6</sup> They may be compared with the Devanagari characters of the same group.<sup>7</sup>

শ	ষ	স	হ
ʃə	ʃə	sə	hə

Cursive forms: ঞা ঞা ঞা ঞা

Words: ঞা ঞা ঞা ঞা

1. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.ii.

3. See above, notes b.i. and c.i.

7. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,1.iii.

2. For transcription, see p.226.

4. See above, notes b.ii. and

5. (uʃʃ).

6. See Ch.1.

The three characters শ, ষ and স are realised as (ʃə), except when they are combined in a conjunct character with certain other characters<sup>1</sup>. They are described, for instance, in spelling, as 'talevye ʃə'(talobbo ʃə), 'muurdhenye ʃə'(murdhonno ʃə) and 'dentye sə'(donto ʃə). ষ occurs only in Sanskrit loanwords.

The character হ, he, is the last character of the Bengali syllabary. Two other characters, ক্ষ, kṣə and জ্ঞ, jṇə, each representing syllables consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel (ə), are often placed after the consonant characters in the əkṣərəmalā. They do not, however, properly belong to the syllabary, and in this work they are discussed later, in the appropriate classes of conjunct characters<sup>2</sup>.

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

1. Of the uṣṣmā characters only শ occurs as a word.
2. Two character words.

i. Final character realised with zero-vowel:

শব    সব    দশ    দখ

ii. Final character realised with (ə):

শত    সম    হত    হর

3. Three character words<sup>4</sup>

সহর    সহজ    সরল    হলফ

4. Four character words<sup>5</sup>

i. খসখস    টসটস    তলতল    চলচল

ii. সহচর    সমতল    ঘনরস    ঘনকফ    মদকট    জলকর

1. See Ch.3.3.Cl.4.i.a.    2. Ibid. Cl.2.ii.b. and Cl.4.i.b.  
3. For transcription, see p.226.    4. Realised as in notes b.i. and c.i. above.    5. Words in line i. realised as in notes b.ii. and c.i.; words in line ii. realised as note c.ii. (compounds).

Realisation of ekar consonant characters in verbal forms.

The realisation of medial and final ekar consonant characters in certain grammatical categories is made according to the general rules given below. No comprehensive statement can be made which covers all categories, but these rules give some guidance in reading from the script. The only complete guide is a knowledge of the spoken language.

a. Verbal bases ending in an ekar consonant character.

i. Verbal bases without suffixes.

The final ekar consonant character of a verbal base is realised with zero-vowel; e.g.

বল	কর	চল	বক
bəle(bol)	kəre(kor)	cele(col)	bəke(bok)

The form of the verb described grammatically as the 'second person singular of the present imperative, inferior form' is written in the same way as the base, and realised in the same way. The final character of this form of the verb is often written with the həsente; e.g.

বল	বল্	কর	কর্	বক	বক্
bəle or bel(bol)		kəre or ker(kor)		bəke or bek(bok)	

ii. Verbal bases with suffixes.

When a suffix beginning with, or consisting of, a consonant character is added to a verbal base, the final character of the base is realised with zero-vowel or with an ə-glide. Examples of this realisation are given below, under note b.

The grammatical forms described as the 'second person of the simple present tense' and the 'second person of the present imperative' are written in the same way as the verbal base; but



are distinguished from the base in reading aloud by the realisation of the final character with the vowel (o). Examples:

বল , be<sub>le</sub>(bolo), কর , ke<sub>re</sub>(koro), পড় , pe<sub>re</sub>(po<sub>ro</sub>)

This realisation occurs with similar grammatical forms of all verbs which have only *ekar* characters in the base. In the 'second person' of the 'future imperative' in which the first *ekar* character is realised with (o), the final character is written with the vowel sign of o<sup>1</sup>. In the verb বস , be<sub>se</sub> , the initial character in both grammatical forms is realised with (o); e.g. বস , (bo<sub>so</sub>).

The realisation of the initial *ekar* character of a verbal base with the vowel (o) is sometimes shown by writing the mark ' after the character, as in কর , ke<sub>re</sub>(koro), করো , ke<sub>ro</sub>(koro)<sup>1</sup>.

b. Verbal forms with suffixes consisting of *ekar* consonant characters.

The verbal suffixes ত , te(to), ব , be(bo) and ল , le(lo) are added to verbal bases to form various 'tenses'<sup>2</sup>. In these verbal forms the final *ekar* character of the base is realised as described in note a.1., and if the base consists of two *ekar* consonant characters the initial character also is realised with the vowel (o). Examples:

করব	করত	করল
ke <sub>re</sub> -be(kor'bo)	ke <sub>re</sub> -te(kor'to) <sup>3</sup>	ke <sub>re</sub> -le(kor'lo) <sup>3</sup>

1. See below, 2.ii, note a.ii. 2. Suffixes of the tenses described as 'future simple' (bo), 'past habitual' (to) and 'past indefinite' (lo). 3. In colloquial Bengali the sequence বল , -rl-, arising from the addition of a suffix beginning with ল , or the sequence রত , -rt- arising from the addition of a suffix beginning with ত , to a verbal base ending in র , are realised respectively as (-ll-) and (-tt-), as in the verbal forms করল , (kollo) and করত , (kotto). This realisation would be made in reading from a Bengali text written in the colloquial style. See further notes on the realisation of verbal forms under 2.ii, and later in Ch.3,3.Cl.1.



## 2. Vowel Characters and Vowel Signs.

Vowel characters are written in Bengali, as in Sanskrit, to represent syllables consisting of a vowel only, and vowel signs are added to consonant characters to represent syllables consisting of an initial consonant followed by one of the vowels in the series given below. These characters may be compared with the Devanagari vowel characters and vowel signs, given in the Sanskrit section.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. Vowel Characters.

অ	আ	ই	ঈ	উ	ঊ
ə	a	i	ii	u	uu
	ঋ	এ	ঐ	ও	ঔ
	r <sup>2</sup>	e	əy̐	o	əy̐

Cursive forms:

অ আ ই ঈ উ ঊ ঋ এ ঐ ও ঔ  
 অর আর ঈং ঈশ উত ঐব ওদ ঔধ

The superscribed strokes in these characters are written last, starting from the matra and writing upwards.

The characters অ, ə, and আ, a, are referred to as স্বরী অ, sverii ə (fori ə) and স্বরী আ, sverii a (fori a)<sup>3</sup>. The other vowel characters are referred to as the vowel which each represents.

The characters ই and ঊ are described as হ্রস্ব, hrasva<sup>4</sup>, 'short', and the characters ঈ and ঔ are described as দীর্ঘ, diirgha<sup>5</sup>, 'long'. The 'short' and the 'long' vowels are realised in reading with very little distinction of quality, but certain words

1. See Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 2.1. and ii. 2. 'syllabic r'; see Ch. 1. Vowels.  
 3. svere, 'vowel'; sverii ə, 'vowel-character ə'. For the realisation of the first vowel character in certain contexts, see special notes under ii. below.  
 4. (hrasva).  
 5. (dirgho).

are always written with the 'short' vowels and others always with the 'long' vowels. Examples of pairs of words of which the meaning is distinguished by the writing of the 'short' or the 'long' vowel, and in which a corresponding distinction must be made in reading, are given later.<sup>1</sup>

The vowel ঞ , syllabic r , occurs only in some Sanskrit loan-words. The vowel characters ঞ , syllabic rr , ঞ , syllabic l , and ঞ , syllabic ll , are used in printing Sanskrit texts in Bengali script. The character ঞ is realised as (ri).

The character এ , e , is usually realised as (e), but varies in certain contexts which are described below, under Vowel Signs.

The character ঐ , ঐ , is realised as the diphthong (oi), and the character ঔ , ঔ , is realised as the diphthong (ou).

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

1. Vowel characters only

আ ই উ এ ঐ ও ঔ

2. Vowel characters and ekar consonant characters

1. Final characters realised with zero-vowel:

আট ইট উট আম ঞন উন এর ওর ঈদ  
ইস ইটল ইতর ঈষৎ উতর উদক এতৎ  
এলম ওতন ঔষধ ঔরত ঔষণ

11. Final characters realised with (o):

ঈশ ওড় অর অপ এণ ওষ ওত ঔম ঈত অগ  
ইত ইব উখ উত ঐক ওল ওষ

1. See below, under 11. Vowel Signs, Reading examples.

2. For transcription of examples, see p.227.

## 11. Vowel Signs.

Vowel signs, corresponding to the vowel characters, are given below added to the consonant character ক . As the vowel *a* is the inherent vowel of each of the consonant characters in the form in which they are given in the syllabary, there is no vowel sign corresponding to the vowel character অ .

কা	কি	কী	কু	কূ	কৃ	কে	কৈ	কো	কৌ
ka	ki	kii	ku	kuu	kr	ke	kəy	ko	kəv

Special forms of some of the characters with vowel signs:

গু	রু	রূ	শু	হু	হ্র
gu	ru	ruu	ʃu	hu	hr

The vowel signs corresponding to the characters ঞ , ঞ্ , and ঞ্ , used in writing Sanskrit, added to ক , are কৃ , কৃ and ক৞ .

Vowel signs which are placed on the left side of the consonant character with which they are to be realised are written before the consonant character; other signs are added after the consonant character has been written. The order of writing the strokes in characters with vowel signs is illustrated in these cursive forms:

বগ তা মি সি হী তী গে নে নৈ শৌ  
 বারী ধাপ বেশী আবার অনেক আপনি বেড়াতে  
 রঙনা সবশনে শিখতে আশাদের তোমরাও দুহুনেই

Characters with vowel signs are referred to in spelling thus:

কে , (ka-e ekar), 'the sign of এ in ক'; গু , (ga-e hroʃfo ukar).

The sign of syllabic r is referred to as (rikar) or (riphola).<sup>1</sup>

1. For examples of spelling words, see below, end of Ch.3.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

চা খু সে গো কু ঝা শী মৌ নু ছি  
 ওতু ঋষি আলো দাও যুই ঢেউ রুটি কৃপা গুরু  
 মোটা শিশু রূপা মানে হদি নীতি ছরী নৌকা  
 গোখুলি জীবিকা কুমারী দাগাবাজি কপোতিকা নিকপাধি

Realisation of *ekar* consonant characters, and certain vowel characters in special contexts.

In reading Bengali words from the script, the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters in words which have vowel characters or vowel signs presents certain difficulties; and the realisation of some of the vowel characters and signs varies in special contexts, such as the occurrence of certain other vowels in following syllables. The notes given below provide some general guidance in reading from the script, but a knowledge of Bengali pronunciation is necessary for correct realisation of such words.

a. Realisation of *ekar* consonant characters.<sup>2</sup>

i. When an *ekar* consonant character occurs as the second character of a three character word preceding a final character with a vowel sign, it is usually realised with zero-vowel, or with an *a*-glide;

e.g.	আমরা	বদলে	ঝগড়া
	aməra(am'ra)	bədele(bəd'le)	jhəgeṛa(jhəg'ṛa)
	টুকরি	মামলা	সামনে
	tukeri(tuk'ri)	mamela(mam'la)	jaməne(jam'ne)

1. For transcription, see p.227.

2. These notes complete the discussion of the realisation of *ekar* consonant characters; see above, notes given on pp.183 and 190.



When the final character of such words is *ekar*, the medial character is realised as described in previous notes. The following examples illustrate this realisation after an initial character with a vowel sign:

ভারৎ	পিতল	কেবল
bharət(bharot)	pitəle(pitol)	kebele(kebol)

When an *ekar* consonant character occurs in a word of four or more characters, it is realised with *ə*, with zero-vowel, or with an *ə*-glide, according to its position in relation to characters with vowel signs. The following examples illustrate the varying realisation of these characters in different contexts:

কমবেশ	গোলযোগ	মারপিট
kəməbeʃə(kom'beʃ)	goləjogə(gol'jog)	marəpitə(mar'pit)
শতকরা	সমজদার	
ʃetekərə(ʃot'kora)	səməjədare(ʃomoj'dar)	

ii. The realisation of the final *ekar* consonant character of verbal bases has been described above<sup>1</sup>. The following verbal forms are further illustrations of this realisation:

পারব	শুনল	আসত
parəbə(par'bo)	ʃunəle(ʃun'lo)	asətə(aʃ'to)

The suffixes in these forms may be written with the *okar*; e.g.

পারবো	শুনলো	আসতো
parəbo(par'bo)	ʃunəlo(ʃun'lo)	asəto(aʃ'to)

Similarly the forms in which the final character of the base are realised with (o) may be distinguished from the forms in which

the final character is realised with zero-vowel by writing this character with the okar; e.g.

কর	কর	করো	কোরো	করো
kəɾə(kəɾ)	kəɾə(kəɾo)	kəɾo(kəɾo)	kəɾə(kəɾo)	kəɾo(kəɾo)
মার	মার	মারো	লেখ	লেখো
maɾə(maɾ)	maɾə(maɾo)	maɾo(maɾo)	lekħə(lekħo)	lekħo(lekħo)

iii. When two words of different meaning are written in the same way and distinguished only by the realisation of the final ekar character of one of the words with (o), this realisation is often indicated by writing the okar, as in these pairs: কাল (kal), 'time', কাল (kalo) or কালো (kalo), 'black'; ভাল (bhal), 'fore-head', ভাল (bhalo) or ভালো (bhalo), 'good'.

b. The realisation of certain vowel characters and signs is affected by the occurrence of other vowels in following syllables.

1. The character অ, or the inherent vowel of an ekar consonant character, is realised as (o) when it is followed by one of the characters, or corresponding signs, for i, ii, u or uu.

e.g. অতি                      ধনী                      অতুল                      সবুজ  
eti(oti)      dhēnii(dhoni)      ətulə(otul)<sup>1</sup>      ʃəbuʒə(ʃobuj)

When the character অ represents the negative prefix, however, the usual realisation of it as (o) is not affected by the occurrence of one of these vowels in the following syllable; e.g.

অধীর, ədhiire(ədhir), অতুল, ətulə(ətul)<sup>2</sup>.

iii. The character এ, or the corresponding sign, in initial position is often realised as (æ) unless it is followed by a

1. A proper name.

2. 'incomparable'.

character with the vowels i , ii , u or uu ; e.g.

বেলা	নেকরা	এমন	এমনি
bela(bwla)	nekaṛa(næk'ṛa)	emana(emon)	emani(em'ni)
এক	একটা	একটী	একটু
eka(æk)	ekaṭa(æk'ta)	ekaṭī(ek'tī)	ekaṭu(ek'tu)

The verbal form দেখে is realised in two ways. When it represents the form described grammatically as 'simple present, third person' it is realised as (dekhe). When it represents the form described as 'past participle', it is realised as (dekhe).

Reading examples, illustrating the notes given above.<sup>1</sup>

1. 1. Final akar characters realised with zero-vowel

তিন দুধ দূর নীল চোখ মেঘ শূণাল মতালেব

- ii. Final akar characters realised with (o)

জুত তিত গুড় মৃগ ছোট দৃঢ় মৌন ষোল ধৌত মৃত

2. Medial akar characters realised as described in note a.i.

চাকর দাহস পাথর পাগল কৌশল দেবর  
তোমরা টুকা কামরা চুপড়ি মুচকি তালপাত গগনভেলা

3. Verbal forms, realised as described in note a.ii.

লেখ লেখ থাক থাক জান্ জান জিতব জিতবো  
শুনত শুনতো জাগল জাগলো ভিজত তুলব শুনল

4. akar characters realised as described in note b.i.

বই কই খই নদী যদি যতি বলি বসি সলিল  
চলিত সহিত জমিদার অভিধান গলিত পলিত  
পলু পটু মধুর মরুৎ বলুক ফতুর বহুৎ

1. For transcription of examples, see p.227.



Realisation of the modified character য়, 'əntəsthə jæ'.<sup>1</sup>

The character য়, referred to as 'əntəsthə jæ(əntostho ə) is a modified form of the əntəsthə character য, yə. This modified character has been introduced into the Bengali script as a graphic device for representing sounds which cannot be represented by the əntəsthə characters য and ব, since in modern Bengali əntəsthə yə is realised by the same sound as vergliyə jæ and əntəsthə və is realised by the same sound as vergliyə bə.<sup>2</sup>

The contexts in which this character occurs, and the realisation of it in reading, are illustrated in the following notes.

a. As the character য় is realised in modern Bengali as (jə), a means of representing the Bengali equivalent of the semi-vowel yə which occurs in Sanskrit loanwords becomes necessary. Sanskrit loanwords which are written in the Devanagari script with the character य, ye, are written in Bengali with əntəsthə jæ, and this character is realised in various ways, illustrated in the examples given below<sup>3</sup>:

1. য় realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide, as in

মায়িক	মায়ুর	নিয়ম	দায়ক
mayika(mayik)	mayura(mayur)	niyama(niyom)	dayake(dayok)
দয়া	মায়়া	আয়োজন	
daya(doya)	mayā(maya)	ayojana(ayojon)	

- 
1. See above, under 1.ii. əntəsthə characters. 2. For a historical discussion of this character, see S.K.Chatterji, The Origin and Development of the Bengali Language, pub. University of Calcutta.
  3. A detailed phonetic analysis is outside the scope of this work, and therefore this vocalic glide, the quality of which may vary according to the vowels preceding or following it, is represented in the phonetic transcription by (y) in the examples given in notes a., b. and c.

11. য realised finally as a vocalic glide of an e-like quality, as in

as in	জয়	সময়	বিষয়
	joye(joy)	someye(somoy)	vipeye(bisoy)
পরিচয়	দায়	কায়	রায়
periceye(poricoy)	daye(day)	kaye(kay)	raye(ray)

or realised as an intervocalic glide followed by the inherent vowel realised as (o), as in

দেয়	নেয়	পেয়	ধেয়
deɣə(deyo) <sup>1</sup>	neɣə(neyo) <sup>1</sup>	peɣə(peyo)	dheɣə(dheyo)
অজেয়	কমনীয়		বর্ণীয়
əjeɣə(əjeyo)	kəmoniɣə(komoniyo)		verɣiɣə(borɣiyo) <sup>2</sup>

b. antesthe ye is written to represent the Bengali equivalent of certain diphthongs in loanwords from other modern languages, and is used in combination with other characters to represent the Bengali equivalent of initial characters combined with ye<sup>3</sup> in such loanwords:-

1. The realisation in modern Bengali of the vowel character ঐ , ঔ , is (oi). Loanwords from other languages in which the Devanagari equivalent of this diphthong occurs, or in which the character representing ye in these languages is realised with the preceding vowel as a diphthong, are written in Bengali with antesthe ye, as illustrated in the examples given below.

1. Compare this realisation with the words written in the same way in note c.ii. below.
2. The character ঞ represents -rg-. See Ch.3,3.Class 3.111.a.
3. See Sanskrit,Ch.3, Conjunct Characters, Class 3.1.

য় , ekar, realised medially as a front vocalic glide with an e-like quality, as in

পয়সা	পয়দা	কায়দা	জায়গা
payasa(poyʃa)	payada(poyda)	kayada(kayda)	jayaga(jayga)
বয়স	পায়স		
veyasa(boyʃ)	payasa(payʃ)		

য় , ekar, realised medially as an intersyllabic vocalic glide, as in

কয়েদ	আয়েস	বয়েৎ
kayedā(koyed)	ayasa(ayef)	boyeta(boyet)

ii. entesthe ʃa is written also in some English loanwords as a means of representing the Bengali pronunciation of the diphthongs in such words as 'chair', চেয়ার (ceyar), and 'care' কেয়ার (keyar).

iii. When the character য , ya , is combined with an initial consonant character in a conjunct character<sup>1</sup>, it is realised as zero. Some loanwords used in modern Bengali are written in Hindi, in the Devanagari script, with initial conjunct characters of Class 3.1., that is, combined with the character representing ʃa . Such words, as loanwords in Bengali, are written in Bengali script with an initial ekar character followed by entesthe ʃa, as in these words: পেয়ালা peyala(peyala). পেয়ার peyare(payar).

c. entesthe ʃa is written in some words in order to avoid writing a vowel character in a medial or final position. This use of entesthe ʃa occurs in words and in grammatical forms.

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.1., and below, Ch.3,3.Class 3.1.



1. য় in words, realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide followed by the inherent vowel or the vowel represented by the vowel sign, as in

মেয়ে	কয়েক	ফটুয়া
meýe(meye)	koyekē(koyek)	phetuýa(photuya)
শিয়র	শিয়া	পোয়াল
ʃiyəra(ʃiyor)	ʃiýa(ʃiya)	poýala(poyal)

11. য় in grammatical forms, in which it is written medially with a vowel sign representing the vowel of a particle, when a particle consisting of a vowel only is added to a word ending in a vowel. The following examples illustrate this use of য় :

Verbal forms in which final য় , akar or ekar, is realised as an intersyllabic vocalic glide after the vowel i and after the inherent vowel, which in this context is realised as (o); as in these forms which are described grammatically as 'past participles', occurring in the literary language -

বলিয়া	দেখিয়া	শুইয়া	গিয়া
beliýa(boliya)	dekhiýa(dekhiya)	ʃuiýa(ʃuiya)	giýa(giya)

and in these colloquial forms, described in the same way -

গিয়ে	দিয়ে	হয়ে	শুয়ে	পেয়ে
giýe(giye)	diýe(diye)	hoýe(hoye)	ʃuýe(ʃuye)	peýe(paye)

Verbal forms in which final য় is realised as a vocalic glide with an e-like quality, as in these forms which are described grammatically as 'present tense, third person' -

নয়	রয়	পায়	জানায়	বেরায়
noýe(noy)	raýe(roy)	paýe(pay)	janaýe(janay)	beroye(beroy)

The verbal forms দেয় and নেয় are realised respectively as (day) and (ney).<sup>1</sup>

Noun forms in which the 'genitive' suffix এর, era(er) is added to nouns ending in a vowel, and noun and pronoun forms in which the 'locative' suffix এ, e(e) is written as antestha ye after a final vowel; antestha ye realised as a vocalic glide -

মায়ের	ঝিয়ার	বউয়ের	দুইয়ের
mayera(mayer)	jhiyera(jhiyer)	bouyera(bouyer)	duiyera(duiyer)
পায়	থানায়	আমায়	তোমায়
paye(pay)	thanaye(thansy)	amay(e)amay	tomaye(tomey)

- d. As the antestha character ব, va, is realised as (bo) in modern Bengali, that is, in the same way as the vergiye character ব, be, a graphic method of representing word structure involving the semivowel ve in loanwords becomes necessary. This semivowel is represented in Bengali by writing the vowel character ও, o, followed by antestha ye. This combination of characters is used in the following examples of loanwords, in which য় is realised as a back vocalic glide, transcribed here phonetically as (-v)

হাওয়া	পোয়া	ডাকওয়ালা	দেওয়ালি
haoya(haova)	poya(poova)	ḍakeoyala(ḍakovala)	deoyali(deovali)

This method of representing a back vocalic glide is used also in verbal forms in which a suffix beginning with (a) is added to a base consisting of one character, as in

হওয়া	যাওয়ান	পাওয়া
haoya(hoova)	yaozana(jaovano)	paoya(paova)

1. Compare the realisation of these forms with that of the two words written in the same way, given above in a.ii.

### 3. Modifiers.

Three modifiers are used in writing Bengali. These are marks added to characters to represent some modification of the syllable it represents. The first two modifiers represent nasalisation, and the third represents aspiration. These modifiers may be compared with the corresponding modifiers of the Devanagari script<sup>1</sup>.

1. চন্দ্র-বিন্দু, candra-bindu, and অনুস্বার, anusvara.

#### a. candra-bindu<sup>2</sup>

When the mark <sup>◌̣</sup> is written above a character, the vowel of the syllable which the character represents is realised with nasalisation. This mark corresponds in form, though not in the way in which it is realised, with the mark called *anunasika* in Sanskrit.

candra-bindu added to vowel characters:

অঁ	আঁ	ইঁ	ঐঁ	উঁ	ঊঁ	এঁ	ঐঁ	ওঁ	ঔঁ
õ	ã	ĩ	ĩi	ũ	ũu	ẽ	ẽy	õ	õv

candra-bindu added to the consonant character ক with vowel signs:

কঁ	কাঁ	কিঁ	কীঁ	কুঁ	কূঁ	কেঁ	কৈঁ	কোঁ	কৌঁ
kõ	kã	kĩ	kĩi	kũ	kũu	kẽ	kẽy	kõ	kõv

Characters written with candra-bindu are referred to in spelling thus: (fori a-e candrobindu), (ko-e candrobindu hrojjo ikar).

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

এঁর ওঁর আঁক হাঁ চিঁ চোঁ টুঁ তাঁ ধাঁ রোঁ তুঁই  
 যুঁই তুঁষ ঠাঁই চাঁচ ছেঁক ভাঁড় ঘোঁট কুঁদল বেঁধে  
 জাঁকা দাঁড়ি খোঁপা ধুঁধুল পঁচিশ হাঁকাড়ি

1. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.1. and 11.

2. (candro-bindu).

3. For transcription, see page 228.  
 realised with zero-vowel.

Final ekar consonant characters



b. anusvara<sup>1</sup>

The term anusvara is used in Bengali to refer to the mark ং , realised as (ŋ). It may occur finally, or medially, written as an alternative to the hasante form of the character ঙ , ণে . These examples illustrate the writing of the anusvar:

এবং	সিং	আংটি	ইংরাজ	সাং
ebam(ebon)	sim(ŋin)	amti(antī)	ingraje(ingraj)	sam(ŋan)

Some words may be written either with the anusvar or with ঙ্গ :

রং	রঙ	বাংলা	বাঙলা
ram(ron) or rang(ron)		banla(banla) or banla(banla)	

The anusvar occurs in many Sanskrit loanwords preceding a character of the antastha or the uṣṁa group, and especially in words which have the Sanskrit prefix written in Devanagari as सम् , sam . The realisation of the anusvar in Bengali, as -ŋ , may be compared with the various ways of realising the anusvar of the Devanagari script in the same Sanskrit loanwords in other parts of India.<sup>2</sup>

Examples: সংযোগ	samyoge(ŋonjog)	সংরাগ	semrage(ŋonrag)
সংবাদ	samyade(ŋonbad)	অঙ্গ	amŋa(ŋonjo)
সংসার	samsare(ŋonŋar)	সিংহ	simhe(ŋinho)

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

নং	টং	গাং	অংশ	দংশন	শংসা	ঠংঠং	বাংশ
সংঘাত	সংবিৎ	পাংশু	সুতরাং	অবতংস	নংশুক		
সংযমন	বংশধর	সংশোধন	সাংঘাতিক	কংসহা			

1. (onussor). In the transcription of examples, in roman notation, the anusvar is transcribed as ŋ in order to distinguish it from the character ঙ্গ , transcribed as ŋ . 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch. 2, 3.1.c.  
3. For transcription of examples, see p. 228.

11. বিসর্গ, visarga.<sup>1</sup>

The sign ঃ written after a character represents aspiration following the vowel of the syllable with which the character is realised. It occurs mainly in Sanskrit loanwords, and is written in a few Bengali exclamations to express emphasis. When the visarga is written with a final character, it is realised as aspiration after the final syllable. When it occurs medially, it is realised as the doubling of the following character, as in দুঃখ, dukkha(dukkho).

Examples:

বাঃ	উঃ	পুনঃ	নিঃশেষ	অতঃপর
bah(bah)	uh(uh)	puneh(puneh)	nihjese(nihjes)	etehpera(etopper)

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

অরুঃ	সরুঃ	পুনঃ	সহঃ	নিঃসুখ	অতঃপর
শতায়ুঃ	নভঃসদ	অচেতাঃ	দুঃসময়	বাঃসদন	
নিঃকারণ	হবিঃশেষ	বনৌকাঃ	নিঃকাসন	দুঃসহ	

4. The Complete Syllabary.

The complete syllabary, arranged in the traditional order, is given on the following page. The Sanskrit vowel characters ঁ , ড and ণ are not included in the syllabary. This table, with the order of characters with vowel signs given above under Vowel Signs<sup>3</sup>, shows the order in which the characters are placed as the initial characters of words in dictionaries. Characters with the anusvar precede the same characters with the cendre-bindu, and both precede characters without the anusvar or cendre-bindu but followed by another consonant character.

1. (bifargo). Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.11.

2. For transcription, see p.228.

3. See above, under 2.11.

অ	আ	ই	ঈ	উ	ঊ
এ	ঐ	ও	ঔ		
	ঋ	অং	অঃ		
ক	খ	গ	ঘ	ঙ	
চ	ছ	জ	ঝ	ঞ	
ট	ঠ	ড	ঢ	ণ	
ত	থ	দ	ধ	ম	
প	ফ	ব	ভ	ম	
	য	র	ল	ব	
	শ	ষ	স	হ	

### 5. Numerals

The Bengali numerals are written thus:

১	২	৩	৪	৫	৬	৭	৮	৯	১০
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	10

### 6. Punctuation

In Bengali prose writing the end of a sentence is marked by an upright stroke of the same height as the upright stroke of a character. This mark is referred to as দাঁড়ি, dāṛi. Other punctuation marks are used as in English. This system is illustrated in the prose passage at the end of this section<sup>1</sup>. The system of punctuation used in Bengali verse is the same as that used in Sanskrit<sup>2</sup>, but in much modern verse the prose system is used.

1. See end of Ch.3. 2. See Sanskrit, Ch.2,3.11. Reading examples.



## CHAPTER 3

### CONJUNCT CHARACTERS

Consonant characters may be combined to represent two or more consonants which are to be realised consecutively, without an intervening vowel. Characters formed in this way are referred to in Bengali as যুক্তাক্ষর, yuktakṣerā.

#### 1. Construction of Conjunct Characters.

Bengali conjunct characters are constructed to some extent by the same methods as the Devanagari conjunct characters, described in the Sanskrit section<sup>2</sup>. These methods vary according to the form of the characters to be combined.

- i. The character which is realised as the second consonant may be subscribed to the first character; e.g.

ক্	ন্	প্	হ্
kke	nte	pte	hme

- ii. The characters to be joined may be written consecutively, without the usual intervening space; e.g.

গ্	চ্	দগ্	ধ্ব
ghe	cche	dge	dhve

- iii. If the first character has a stroke which can be used as part of the second character, the characters may be joined as in these examples:

দ	ব	ন	জ
dde	bde	nde	bje

---

1. (yuktakkhor).      2. See Sanskrit, Ch.3.1.

- iv. The form of either the first or the second character may be modified in order to make possible the writing of the two characters as one conjunct character. These modifications vary according to the form of the characters to be joined; e.g.

ত	থ	ড	ঠ	ঠ	স্ত
tte	tthe	kte	ṛthe	ṣthe	ste

- v. The characters ত , য , and র , have special forms which are used when they are combined with other characters; e.g.

ৎক	ৎপ	ক্য	ত্য	র্ক	ক্র
tkē <sup>1</sup>	tpē	kya	tye	rke	kra

- vi. If any characters cannot be combined by any of these methods, the realisation of them without an intervening vowel is indicated by writing the first character with the hesente.

The modified forms of some of the characters, written as the second part of a conjunct character, are referred to as the syllable which the full character represents and the particle ফলা , phela (phola); e.g. যফলা , ye-phela(jophola), বফলা , va-phela(bophola). The modified forms of the characters ন , ঘ , র , ল , used in forming conjunct characters, are also referred to in this way.<sup>2</sup>

## 2. Contexts and Realisation of Conjunct Characters.

Conjunct characters in Bengali occur in the following contexts:

1. In Bengali words, that is, words not borrowed from Sanskrit or from modern languages; e.g.

বডড	পটন	মুণ্ড
bedde(boddo)	petten(potton)	munḍe(munḍo)

1. See above, Ch.2,1.1. kheṇḍe te. 2. For spelling terms used in referring to conjunct characters, see end of this chapter.

11. In Sanskrit loanwords, either words used commonly in Bengali, or words used in the literary language only; e.g.

পন্থা	শব্দ	রাষ্ট্র
pantha(pontha)	śabda(śabdo)	raṣṭra(rāṣṭro)

- In the classes of conjunct characters given below, under 3., conjunct characters are included which are used only in writing Sanskrit. Some of these characters do not occur in Bengali texts, though words including them are found in Bengali dictionaries.
111. In loanwords from other languages; e.g.

খঞ্জর	মাষ্টার	চর্কি
khənjərə(khənjor)	maṣṭara(maṣṭar)	cerbbi(corbbi)

Conjunct characters are realised as syllables consisting of two or more consonants followed by a vowel. The realisation of əkar conjunct characters in various positions follows in general the rules already given for the realisation of əkar consonant characters. In describing the realisation of individual characters, the inherent vowel is phonetically transcribed as (ɔ), as in the transcription of the characters of the syllabary.

The realisation in modern Bengali of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel, or with an ə-glide, in certain positions in words gives rise to a problem of spelling. This realisation of such characters in words of three or more characters, and in verbal bases with suffixes added, has been illustrated above<sup>1</sup>. The realisation of əkar consonant characters with zero-vowel in such contexts often results in the speaking of two consecutive consonants in a way similar to the realisation of a conjunct character. Examples of Bengali words in

1. See above, Ch.2.2.11.



which the realisation of separate consonant characters is similar to that of conjunct characters are given below with the various classes.

### 3. Classes of Conjunct Characters in Bengali.

The Bengali conjunct characters are arranged in this chapter in the same four classes as the Devanagari characters given in the Sanskrit section. All the characters given in the Sanskrit section have equivalents in the Bengali script, and all the examples given in that section can be written in Bengali script. The reading examples given with each class of conjunct characters include some learned loanwords which may be found in literary texts.

#### Class 1. Two similar characters joined.<sup>1</sup>

These characters represent syllables consisting of a 'doubled' consonant followed by a vowel.

ক	ক্কা	গা	গ্গ	ঘ	ঘ্ঘ	চ	চ্চ	জ	জ্জ	ঝ	ঝ্ঝ	--
-kko	-kkhe	-ggo	-gghe	--	--	-cco	-cche	-jje	-jje	-jje	-jjhe	--
ট	ট্ট	ড	ড্ড	ন	নন্	ত	ত্ত	দ	দ্দ	ন্ধ	ন্ধ	ন
-tto	-tthe	-ddo	-ddhe	-nno	--	-tto	-tthe	-ddo	-dde	-dde	-dde	-nno
প	প্প	ব	ব্ভ	ম	ম্ম	শ	শ্শ	স	স্স	--	--	--
-ppo	-pphe	-bbo	-bbhe	-mmo	--	-sso	-sshe	-sso	-sso	--	--	--
য	য়	ল	ল্ল	শ	শ্শ	স	স্স	--	--	--	--	--
-yye	--	-lle	--	-sso	--	-sso	--	--	--	--	--	--

The character ন is realised as (nno). The character য় is realised as (jje), or when it is akar, as (jje). The character স্স, which occurs only in loanwords, is realised as (sso).

1. Compare Sanskrit, Ch.3.3. Class 1.

When a suffix with an initial consonant character is added to a verbal base with a final ekar consonant character, the realisation of the consecutive characters in the verbal form is similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class. Examples:

করত , karata(kotto), পারলাম , parelame(pallam).<sup>1</sup>

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

পক্ষ কক্খট পগাড় কচ্চর ইচ্ছা লজ্জা কুজ্জাটিকা  
ঠাট্টা উড্ডীন ষমবত উত্তর উত্থান চৌদ্দ শুদ্ধ কাম্মা  
ছন্নর ছাব্বিশ উম্মেদ শয্যা ফুল্ল মনশ্শান্তি হিঙ্গা  
বিষম সাহায্য সদ্ধার তিব্বৎ পরিচ্ছন্ন বৃদ্ধ চিত্ত

### Class 2. Two vergiliya characters joined.<sup>3</sup>

These characters occur mainly in Sanskrit loanwords. The series of Devanagari characters of this class, given in the Sanskrit section, includes many characters which occur in the joining of words in compounds, in phrases and in sentences in a Sanskrit text. The characters occurring in a Sanskrit text printed in Bengali script can be recognised with a knowledge of Sanskrit; but it is beyond the scope of this work to include all the possible combinations of characters in this class. The characters given below may occur in a Bengali literary text.

1.	ক্ত	ৎক	ৎখ	গ্দ	দ্গ	গ্ধ	দ্ধ
	-kte	-tke	-tkhe	-gde	-dge	-gdha	-dghe
11.	ৎপ	ৎফ	প্ত	দ্ব	ব্ধ	দ্ব	ব্ধ
	-tpe	-tphe	-pte	-dhe	-bde	-dbhe	-bdhe

1. These forms are sometimes written, for instance, in dialogue, with conjunct characters. Cf. notes in Ch.2,1.111.

2. For transcription, see p.228. 3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.2.1.-iv.

11.a.	ক	খ	ঙ্গ	জ	ঞ	জ্	জ্ঞ	ঞ
	-ṅka	-ṅkha	-ṅga	-ṅha	-ṅca	-ṅcha	-ṅja	-ṅjha
	ট	ঠ	ণ্ড	ণ	ন্ত	ন্ত্	ন্ত্	ন্ত্
	-ṅṭa	-ṅṭha	-ṅṇa	-ṅṇha	-ṅṭa	-ṅṭha	-ṅṇa	-ṅṇha
	ম্প	ম্ফ	ম্ভ	ম্ভ	Special ukar form			ন্ত
	-mpe	-mphe	-mbe	-mbhe				ntu

The nasal consonant of the ke-verge, in the first group above, may be represented alternatively by the anusvar<sup>1</sup>. The character ঞ , joined with a character of the ce-verge, is realised as (n-). The character ণ , joined with a character of the te-verge, is realised as (ṅ-).

b.	ক্	জ্	ত্	দ্
	-cpe	jpa	-tna	-dna

The character ক্ occurs only in the Sanskrit loanword যাক্ষা , yacna, realised as (jaena) or as (jacinga).

The character জ্ is realised initially as (ga); and medially as (ga), with nasalisation of the following vowel, as in

জান jana(gan), and আজ্ , ajna(aggā). This character is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the akṣeramaḥ after the consonant characters<sup>2</sup>.

11i.	ক্	গ্	ঘ্	জ্	ত্	দ্	প্
	-kma	-gma	-ghma	-ghma	-tma	-dma	-pma

The character জ্ , tma, is realised as (tta), often with nasalisation of the following vowel, as in আত্ম , atma(atta).

The character দ্ , dma, is realised as (dda), with nasalisation

1. See above, Ch.2.3.1.b. 2. Words beginning with this character are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with জৌ .



of the following vowel, except in words in common use, such as  
পদ্ম , pādme(pāddō, pāddo).

iv.	ঞ	ঞ	ঞ	ঞ
	-ŋme	-ŋme	-nme	-mne

The following examples illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is *ekar*, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class:

Verbal forms	কাঁদব	কাঁপত	শুনতাম
	kāḍebə(kāḍ'bo)	kāpəte(kāp'to)	ṣunətamə(ṣun'tam)
Other words	পানমরিচ	পাতকুয়া	হাতছানি
	panəmericə(pan'moric)	patekuṣya(pat'kuya)	hatechani(hat'chani)

#### Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

1. শক্তি বাগদান উদ্যমন উদ্যাত অন্তত শব্দ উৎপথ দক্ষ  
গুপ্ত উৎকর উৎফুল্ল উৎপন্ন চমৎকার উৎখাত ঘটকোণ
- ii. অলঙ্কার শঙ্খ সঙ্কত সঙ্কটন অঙ্কল লাঞ্ছনা অঞ্জলি  
বাক্ষাট কটকী কঠা পাণ্ডা টুটিত শান্তি পঙ্খী নিন্দা  
অঙ্ক সম্পদ লক্ষ অম্বর সম্ভব জ্ঞান জিজ্ঞাসা পঙ্খী পঙ্ক্তি
- iii. শয্যা সংলগ্ন আশ্রা ঘ্রা বাঘ্মী
- iv. উন্মগ্ন জন্ম নিম্নোক্ত বাহ্যয় ষম্মাপ

#### Class 3. Characters joined with *entesthe* characters.

##### 1. Characters joined with following য .2

All the characters of the Bengali syllabary occur in this class except ঙ . ŋə and ঞ , pe . These conjunct characters are formed by adding the stroke ʃ , referred to as *yephela*(jophola) to another character, thus: ক্য , kye , ত্য , tye , প্য , pye , শ্য , ʃye .

1. For transcription, see p.228. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 3.i.

Conjunct characters may be formed by combining three characters; e.g.

ক্ৰ , ktya, ক্ত্য , ntya, ক্কা , ndhya, ক্ত্যা , tmya.

Characters written with yephala are realised in various ways; and the occurrence of a character combined with yephala in certain contexts affects the quality of some of the vowels.

a. Realisation of characters with yephala.

When an initial character is written with yephala it is realised as as zero-yephala and the vowel of the syllable, e.g.

নুন	ধ্যেয়	জ্যোতিষ
nyuuna(nun)	dhyeyā(dheyo)	jyotiṣa(jotiṣ)

When a medial or a final character is written with yephala, the character is realised as the doubling of the consonant represented by the character with which yephala is written<sup>1</sup>; e.g.

বাক্য	রাজ্য	পুণ্য
vakya(bakko)	raja(rajjo)	punya(punno)

b. Realisation of vowels affected by yephala.

An ekar character preceding a character with yephala is realised with the inherent vowel as (o), e.g.

অন্য	দভ্য	কল্য	তালব্য
anya(onno)	sabhya(jobbho)	kelya(kollo) <sup>2</sup>	talavya(talobbo)

If an initial character with yephala is ekar, the vowel is realised as (æ), unless the ekar character is followed by an ikar or an iikar character, when it is realised as (e)<sup>3</sup>; e.g.

ব্যথা	ব্যথী	ব্যঞ্জন	ব্যতীত
vyetha(bætha)	vyethii(bethi)	vyenjena(banjon)	vyetiite(betito)

1. For examples of medial characters, see below, under note b.

2. Cf. the verbal form করল , karela(kollo), Ch.2,1.iii.note b.

3. Cf. note on realisation of vowel characters and signs, Ch.2,2.ii.b.

If a character with yephela is akar, the vowel is realised as (æ),

e.g. ন্যায়      ধ্যান      ব্যাখ্যান      কন্যা  
nyāya(nay)<sup>1</sup>    dhyāna(dhæn)    vyākhyāna(baikkhæn)    kenya(konnæ)

In the word উদ্যোগ, udyoge, a Sanskrit loanword in which the conjunct character arises from the joining of the prefix উৎ, ut-, with the word যোগ, yoge, the medial character is realised as (djo), the word being realised as (udjog)<sup>2</sup>. This realisation may be contrasted with the realisation of the character with yephela in বিদ্যা, vidya(biddæ). Note also সহ্য, sehya(ʃojjho).

Reading examples<sup>3</sup>

বাক্য    খ্যাত    যোগ্যতা    চ্যবন    চ্যুত    জ্যোতি    জ্যেষ্ঠা    চ্যাঁ  
ঠ্যাং    ট্যাঁড়া    পুণ্য    যত্যাচার    অত্যাশ্রম    অত্যয়    সত্য  
ভূত্যের    মিথ্যা    গদ্য    দুমনি    অবাধ্য    ধ্যান    ধ্যেয়    ন্যায়  
ন্যূন    উপন্যাস    প্যান    রৌপ্য    অভ্যাস    ঘ্যাও    কল্যান    তালব্য  
ব্যঞ্জন    শ্যাম    মনুষ্য    স্যদ    সহ্য    উদ্যান    সন্ধ্যা    সঙ্খ্যেয়

#### 11. Characters with following ব .4

This class of conjunct characters consists of characters combined with entestha ve, corresponding with the Devanagari characters joined with the entestha character व, ve. These conjunct characters occur only in Sanskrit loanwords. When व, or its modified form, occurs as the second part of a conjunct character, it is referred to as vephela(bophela). It is written with some characters in the full form, joined to the preceding character by the matra, as in धव, dhve, हव, hve; or in the modified form, added to the foot of a

1. Cf. the verbal form realised as (nay) in the note on entestha ye on p.203.      2. Also realised as (uddog).

3. For transcription, see p.229.      4. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3. Class 3.11.



character, as in ক , kve , ত , tve , শ , jve . The form of the character ব , rve , is discussed later, under iii.a.

The following are examples of conjunct characters formed by combining three characters: ত্ত , ttve , দ্ধা , ddhve , ক্ত , ktve .

In the conjunct characters of this class, antasthe ve is regarded as a separate character from vergiiye be, although in the syllabary the two characters are the same. Words beginning with an initial conjunct character of this class are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with conjunct characters formed by combining a consonant character with a following র .

When vephela is written with an initial character, it is realised as zero; e.g.

স্বামী	জাল	ত্বক্ত	দ্বাদশ
svamii(jami)	jvale(jal)	tvakta(tokto)	dvadeśa(dadoś)

When vephela is written with a medial or a final character, it is realised as the first part of the conjunct character doubled, with zero-realisation of vephela, as in the following examples:

অব্ধ	ঈশ্বর	বিশ্ব	কণ্ণ
enveha(onnoho)	iīṣvere(ijṣor)	viṣve(biṣṣo)	kaṇve(konno)

The character হ্বে , hve , is realised as a v-glide followed by a bilabial aspirate, as in বিশ্বল , bihvle(bivvhol).

In Sanskrit words, used as learned loanwords in literary Bengali, a prefix ending in a hesente consonant character may be added to a word with initial antasthe ve. In the conjunct character which results, and in the conjunct characters which arise from the joining

of two words in a compound, vephala is realised as (b-); e.g.

উদ্ভিন্ন

সদ্যবহার

ঋগ্বেদ

udvigne(udbigno) sadvyevahare(ṣadbabohar) rgveda(rigbed)

The words উদ্ভান , udvane(uddan), and বিদ্বান , vidvane(bidden) are exceptions to this general rule.

The realisation of vephala, illustrated by the above examples, results in a similarity of realisation of two or more words which are the same in the spoken language and distinguished only in writing; e.g. ধনী , dheni, and ধ্বনি , dhveni, realised as (dheni),<sup>1</sup>

শিকার , ṣikara, and স্বীকার , sviikara, realised as (ṣikar),<sup>2</sup>

শর , ṣara, সর , sara, and স্বর , svara , realised as (ṣar).<sup>3</sup>

Reading examples<sup>4</sup>

কৃষ্ণ পক্ষ উচ্ছ্বাস জ্বাল ফরা তত্ত্ব ধ্বংস বিশ্ব  
দৈশ্বর স্বচ্ছ অবেষণ স্বদেশ সরস্বতী শ্বাপ জিহ্বা

iii. Characters joined with preceding র্ or with following র .

a. র্ preceding another character.<sup>5</sup>

Conjunct characters of this class are formed by writing a stroke referred to as রেফ , rephe (reph), above the character before which র্ is to be realised.

This stroke is placed at the right hand side of any other super-scribed stroke, and is the last stroke of the character to be written.

e.g. ক্ ট্ ট্ ত্ প্ কী কে কৌ  
-rke -rce -rṭe -rte -rpe -rkii -rke -rkeṭ

The characters গ , চ , জ , ত , দ , ধ , ন , য and ব

1. 'master' and 'sound'.

2. 'hunting' and 'agreement'.

3. 'arrow', 'cream' and 'voice'.

4. For transcription, see p.229.

5. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Cl.3.iii.a.

are often written in their doubled form with reph<sup>1</sup>; e.g.

ঠ , rttē, ঞ , rgge, ঞ্চ , rmmē, ঞ্চ , rvve

In some words, including verbal forms, the realisation of ekar consonant characters with zero-vowel in certain positions leads to the realisation of র্ before another consonant character in a way similar to the realisation of rephe, as in these examples:-

Verbal forms: পারত , pareto(par'to, patto), মরল , maralo(mollo)

Other words: দরবার , derabare(dar'bar), সরকার , sarekare(sar'kar)

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

তর্ক মুখ বর্গীয় দীর্ঘ বার্চি মূর্ছন সর্জু বর্ণ কর্তব্য  
পদার্থ কর্দট অর্দ্ধ দুর্নাম সর্প সমর্পণ ধর্ম মর্যাদা দুর্লভ  
বহির্ভূত সর্ক মর্শন মর্ষণ গর্হণ আর্ষ্য বিসর্গ সর্দার

b. র following another character.<sup>3</sup>

Conjunct characters of this class are formed by subscribing the stroke referred to as raphela(raphola) to a consonant character. The characters with raphela which occur in Bengali, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords, are illustrated by the reading examples given below.

The following characters illustrate the calligraphy of characters with raphela, with some special forms; and some conjunct characters formed by joining three characters:

ক্ৰ	গ্র	জ্ৰ	ত্ৰ	দ্র	প্র	ভ্র	শ্র	হ্র
kre	gre	jre	tre	dre	pre	bhra	fre	hre

ক্ৰু	ক্রু	শ্রু	ত্ৰু	দ্রু	প্রু	ভ্রু	শ্রু
dru	dhruu	fru	tru	-ngre	-ndre	-ktre	-ndhre

1. The rules of orthography of Calcutta University, given in the Bengali dictionary চলচ্চিত্র, p.597, recommend that this practice be discontinued. 2. For transcription, see p.230.  
3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3. Cl.3.iii.a.



Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

কৃষ্ণ গ্রাম ঘেয় বজ্র পুত্র দ্রব্য প্রশাম প্রিয়  
 ভ্রমর ব্যগ্র আশ্রয় সম্রাট দ্রুত ক্র বধ ব্রত শ্রী  
 হিত অশ্রু প্রার্থনা আকু উচ্চর্য সন্ধান্ত পত্ন সন্তহ

iv. Characters with preceding ল্ or with following ল .<sup>2</sup>

a. ল্ preceding another character.

Characters joined with preceding ল্ are formed by writing the second character either immediately after, or below, ল , thus:-

ক , lke , ঙ , lge , ঞ , lpe , ন্য , lme . Only a few of the Bengali characters occur with preceding ল্ , and these are illustrated below in the reading examples.

b. ল following another character.

These characters are formed by writing ল at the foot of the character after which it is to be realised, thus -

ক্ , kle , ঙ্ , gle , ঞ্ , ple , ন্য্ , mle , শ্ , fle . The character হ্ is not combined with ল in a conjunct character, but the two characters are written consecutively, thus হল . When ল , or a modified form of it, is added to another character as the second part of a conjunct character, it is referred to as lephela(lophola). Only a few of these characters occur, mostly in Sanskrit loanwords. Those which occur are illustrated below in the reading examples.

The realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is ekar and in certain positions, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class is illustrated in these

1. For transcription, see p.230.

2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.C1.3.iv.a. and b.

words: বিলকুল , bilēkulā(bil'kul), মতলব , metelēbe(mat'lob).

Reading examples<sup>1</sup>

উদ্ধা বহ্নিত ফাল্গুন উল্টা গল্প গুল্ম প্রগল্ভ গুল্ম উল্ল  
ক্লাস্ত শ্লোপন প্লাবন তল্লক শ্লান শ্লোক অশ্লীল শ্লাদ

Class 4. vergiiye characters joined with preceding or following  
uṣṣme characters.

1. Characters combined with preceding শ্ , ষ্ or স্

a. শ্ , ষ্ or স্ preceding another character.<sup>2</sup>

Characters which occur with preceding শ্ :-

শ্চ	শ্ছ	শ্জ	শ্ম
-fche	-fche	-fne	fme

Characters which occur with preceding ষ্ :-

ষ্ক	ষ্ট	ষ্ঠ	ষক	ষ্প	ষ্ফ	ষ্ম
-ške	-ṣṭe	-ṣṭhe	-ṣṇe	-ṣpe	-ṣphe	-ṣme

Words with cursive forms:

বৃষ্ণ নষ্ট জ্যেষ্ঠ পুষ্প নিষ্কল্ণ নিষ্কল্ণ

The character ষ্ combined with the characters of the [e-verge , except with ণ , ṇe , is realised as (ṣa). When combined with ণ the conjunct character is realised as (fna). The characters ষ্ক , ষ্কে , ষ্প , ষ্পে , and ষ্ফ , ষ্ফে are realised as (fka), (fpa) and (fpho) in ordinary speech, but may be realised as (ṣka), (ṣpo) and (ṣpho) in formal speech. ষ্ম , fne , is usually realised as (sno).

1. For transcription, see p.230. 2. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3,3.Class 4.1.

Characters which occur with preceding স্ :-

ক্	খ্	স্ত্	স্থ্	স্ন্	স্প্	ফ্	শ্ম্
ake	akhe	ste	sthe	sne	spe	spha	sme

The character স্ combined with characters of the *ta*-verge is realised as (s). Note the form of the character স্ত্, *stu*.

The characters শ্ম্, *jma*, and স্ম্, *sma*, *akar* or *akar*, are realised initially as (ʃʒ) and (ʃā), as in the words শ্মশ্রু, *jmesru* (ʃʒeru) and স্মারক, *smareke* (ʃārok). These two characters, and স্ম্, *sma*, are realised medially and finally as (ʃʃʒ), as in the words উষ্ম, *uʃma* (uʃʃʒ) and ভষ্ম, *bhesma* (bhoʃʃʒ).

Conjunct characters of Classes 1., 2. and 3. may occur with preceding *uʃma* characters, such as -

ঈ , -stve , ঈ , -stro , ঈ , -stro , ঈ , -stve .

The following words illustrate the realisation of consecutive consonant characters, when the first is *akar* in certain positions, in a way similar to the realisation of conjunct characters of this class:

আপ্ত , *aspte* (af'to)<sup>1</sup> চশমা , *caʃama* (coʃ'ma)

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

পশ্চাৎ নিশ্চয় নিশ্চিদ্র আশ্চর্য প্রথ নিষ্কৃত নষ্ট জ্যেষ্ঠ  
নিষ্ঠুর কৃষ্ণ নিষ্পত্তি নিষ্কল গ্রীষ্ম ক্লদ স্থলিত শুক্ল স্পর্শ  
স্বরণ স্বস্ত স্বান বিধ্ব স্পষ্ট স্মৃতি বিস্ময় স্মৃতি স্ত্রী রাষ্ট্র

b. Characters joined with following য় or স্.<sup>3</sup>

Three characters occur in this group, in Sanskrit loanwords:

ক্ , *kʃe* , ত্ , -tʃe and প্ , -pʃe . In writing Sanskrit in Bengali

1. Verbal form.

2. For transcription, see p.230.

3. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch.3.3.Class 4.1.b.



script, however, characters corresponding to all the characters given in the Sanskrit section are used. The character **क्ष**, -kṣa, occurs in English loanwords.

Cursive forms in words -

যুক্তাক্ষর      শিক্ষা      যক্ষা      নক্ষত্র      তীক্ষ্ণ      তৎক্ষণাৎ

The character **ক্ষ** is not calligraphically a conjunct character, and it is often included in the syllabary after the consonant characters. It does not, however, belong properly to the syllabary, as it represents a syllable consisting of two consonants followed by the vowel *a*.<sup>1</sup> Words beginning with this character are placed in dictionaries after words beginning with **क्**, kva. It is realised initially as (kḥa) and medially and finally as (kkḥa). The realisation of the characters **क्ष**, kṣṇa, and **क्ष्म**, kṣma, is illustrated in these examples:

<b>क्षुत</b>	<b>तीक्ष्ण</b>	<b>सूक्ष्म</b>
kṣṇuta(khnuto)	tiikṣṇa(tikkhno)	suukṣma(fukkhō)

When an *ekar* character is followed by **क्ष**, the inherent vowel is realised as (o), as in **लक्ष्ण**, lākṣṇa(llokhno); and if **क्ष** is *akar*, the vowel sign may be realised as (æ), as in these words -

**रक्षा**, rakṣa(rokḥa, rokḥæ), **यक्षा**, yākṣma(jokḥæ).

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

অক্ষর      পরিক্ষিত      তৎক্ষণাৎ      সূক্ষ্ম      আর্ক      মৎসর  
বিপ্সা      অপ্সরা      খিন্ন      ক্বিন্ন

1. Cf. note on **क्** under Class 2. above.  
2. For transcription, see p.230.

11. হ joined with anunasika ('nasal') characters<sup>1</sup>.

Three of the anunasik characters are joined with হ :-

হ্ -hṇe      হ্ -hne      হ্ -hne

The characters হ্ and হ্ are realised as (nhə), and the character হ্ is realised as (mhə).

Reading examples<sup>2</sup>

অপরান্ন আহ্নিক চিহ্ন মধ্যাহ্ন ব্রহ্মা প্রাহ্ন পূর্বাহ্ন

Bengali prose passage<sup>3</sup>

একদিন অপেক্ষাকৃত অল্পবয়সে যখন আমার শক্তি ছিল তখন কখনো কখনো ইংরেজি সাহিত্য মুখে মুখে বাংলা করে শুনিয়োঁচি আমার শ্রোতারা ইংরেজি জানতেন সবাই । তবু তাঁরা স্বীকার করে চেন ইংরেজি সাহিত্যের বাণী বাংলা ভাষায় তাঁদের মনে সহজে সাড়া পেয়েচে । বস্তুত আধুনিক শিক্ষা ইংরেজি ভাষাবাহিনী বলেই আমাদের মনের প্রবেশপথে তার অনেকখানি মারা যায়। ইংরেজি খানার টেবিলে আহ্বানের জটিল পদ্ধতি যার অভ্যস্ত নয় এমন বাঙালীর ছেলে বিলেতে পাড়ি দেবার পথে দি এণ্ড ও কোম্পানীর ডিনার কামরায় যখন খেতে বসে, তখন ভোজ্য ও রসনার মধ্য-পথে কাঁটা-ছুরির দৌত্য তার পক্ষে বাধ্যগ্রস্ত বলেই ভরপুর ভোজের মাঝখানেও ক্ষুধিত জঠরের দাবী সম্পূর্ণ মিটতে চায় না । আমাদের শিক্ষার ভোজেও সেই দশা, — আছে সবই অথচ মাঝপথে অনেকখানি অপচয় হয়ে যায় । এ যা বলচি এ কলেজি যজ্ঞের কথা, আমার আজকের আলোচ্য বিষয় এ নিয়ে নয় । আমার বিষয়-

1. Cf. Sanskrit, Ch. 3, 3. Cl. 4. 11.

2. For transcription, see p. 230.

3. Rabindranath Tagore, Śikṣapā Vikirapā, an address on university training, pub. University of Calcutta, 1933.

টা সৰ্বসাধাৰণেৰ শিক্ষা নিয়ে । শিক্ষাৰ জলৈৰ কল চালানোৰ কথা  
নয়, পাইপ যেখানে পৌছয় না সেখানে পানীয়েৰ ব্যবস্থাৰ কথা ।  
মাতৃভাষায় সেই ব্যবস্থা যদি গোপ্পদেৰ চেয়ে প্রশস্ত না হয় তবে এই  
বিদ্যাহাৰা দেশেৰ মৰুবাসী মনেৰ উপায় হবে কী ।

Examples of Bengali spelling terms, including conjunct characters:

গগড়	(pə, gəe gə, dʒe funno ɽə)
হিস্‌সা	(həe hrɔʃʃo ikar, donto ʃəe hoʃonto, donto ʃəe akar)
তিকাৎ	(təe hrɔʃʃo ikar, bəe bəphola, khaŋdʒo tə)
শক্তি	(talobbo ʃə, kəe tə tate hrɔʃʃo ikar)
জ্ঞান	(borgiyo ʃəe ʃəe akar, donto nə)
জন্ম	(borgiyo ʃə, donto nəe məphola)
চুড়িত	(dʒhəe hrɔʃʃo ukar, murdhonno nəe dʒhə tate hrɔʃʃo ikar, tə)
ট্যাঁ	(tʃəe ʃəpholae cəndrobindu tate akar)
সন্ধ্যা	(donto ʃə, donto nəe dhəe ʃəphola, tate akar)
ঈশ্বৰ	(dirgho i, talobbo ʃəe bəphola, reph ɽə)
আৰ্য	(ʃori a, əntostho ʃəe reph)
সৰ্ব	(donto ʃə, bəe bəphola tate reph)
উজ্জয়	(hrɔʃʃo u, cəe chəe rəphola, əntostho ə)
লোক	(talobbo ʃəe ləphola tate okar, kə)
সংস্কৃত	(donto ʃə, onuʃʃər, donto ʃəe kə tate riphola, tə)
নিশ্চয়	(nəe hrɔʃʃo ikar, talobbo ʃəe cə, əntostho ə)
স্ত্রী	(donto ʃəe təe rəphola tate dirgho ikar)
শিক্ষা	(talobbo ʃəe hrɔʃʃo ikar, khyɽe akar)
গ্রীষ্ম	(gəe rəphola tate dirgho ikar, murdhonno ʃəe məphola)



Transcription of Reading Examples<sup>1</sup>Chapter 2.

1.1.	ke ka	che cho	ne no	pe po	de do	dhe dho	je jo	te to	ta ta	khe kho	the tho
nada nad	nekhe nokh	teke tok	pade pad	khere khar	jhere jhar	ghete gho	patha path	teta to			
kete koto	bete boto	ghene ghono	pete poto	gote gato	pate pato	jete joto	nate nato	tate toto			
bene bon	jene jon	mene mon	kene kon								
pheteke phok	ketake kotok	jaget jagot	gheteke ghok								
cepetete cet'pet	ketekete kot'kot	kacamece kac'mac	dhakameke dhak'mok	khetekheke khet'khet							
theketheke thok'thok	geregere gor'gor	tapatepe top'top	teketeke tok'tok	dhepedhepe dhap'dhap							
1.11.	kole kol	ghere ghar	mala mal	pere par	bale bal	rake rak	dole dol	rothe roth	phole phal		
	jete joto										
badole bodol	gelede gled	moleje moloj	negere nagor	gelede gled							
kheretere khoratar	phalekere phalokor	kelerere kalarab									
1.111.	seve sob	sobe sob	deve dof	seke sokh							
	jete joto	sene somo	hete hoto	here horo							
sehore shor	seheje shoj	serele serol	helephe haloph								

1. Brackets are omitted in the phonetic transcription in order to make it possible to place this transcription immediately below each word in the systematic transcription.

khəsekhesə    t̪esət̪esə    t̪el̪et̪el̪    d̪h̪el̪ed̪h̪el̪  
 khaʃ'khaʃ    t̪əʃ't̪əʃ    tol'tol    d̪h̪əl'd̪h̪əl

səhəcərə    səmetel̪    ghən̪er̪esə    ghen̪ekəphə    mədekəʔe    j̪el̪əkərə  
 ʃohocər    ʃomotol̪    ghon̪or̪əʃ    ghon̪okəph    mədokəʔ    j̪ol̪okər

2.i.    a    i    u    e    əʃ    o    əʋ  
          a    i    u    e    oi    o    ou

aʔe    iʔe    uʔe    amə    r̪n̪e    uun̪e    erə    orə    iide  
 aʔ    iʔ    uʔ    am    rin    un    er    or    id

ise    it̪el̪e    it̪er̪e    iʃat    ut̪er̪e    udeke    et̪et̪  
 iʃ    iʔol̪    it̪or̪    iʃot̪    ut̪or̪    udok    et̪ot̪

el̪em̪e    ot̪en̪e    əʋʃed̪h̪e    əʋr̪et̪e    əʋʃen̪e  
 elom    ot̪on̪    ouʃod̪h̪    our̪ot̪    ouʃon̪

iif̪e    or̪e    ər̪e    ep̪e    en̪e    og̪h̪e    ot̪e    əʋm̪e    iite    əge  
 iʃo    or̪o    ər̪o    ep̪o    en̪o    og̪ho    oto    oumo    it̪o    ogo

it̪e    ib̪e    uk̪h̪e    ut̪e    əʃke    ol̪e    oʃe  
 it̪o    ib̪o    uk̪ho    ut̪o    oiko    olo    oʃo

2.ii.    ca    thu    se    go    kuu    j̪hi    ʃii    məʋ    nr̪    chi  
          ca    thu    ʃe    go    ku    j̪hi    ʃi    mou    nr̪i    chi

otu    r̪ʃi    alo    dao    yui    d̪heu    ruʔi    kr̪pa    guru  
 ot̪u    r̪iʃi    alo    dao    j̪ui    d̪heu    ruʔi    kr̪ipa    guru

moʔa    ʃifu    ruupa    mane    hr̪di    niiti    hur̪i    nəʋka  
 moʔa    ʃifu    ruʔa    mane    hr̪idi    niti    huri    nouka

godhuli    jiivika    kumar̪i    dagabaji    kəpotika    nirupadhi  
 godhuli    jibika    kumari    dagabaji    kəpotika    nirupadhi

p.198.    t̪in̪e    dud̪h̪e    duure    niil̪e    cok̪h̪e    meg̪h̪e    ʃrgal̪e    motalebe  
          tin̪    dud̪h̪    dur̪    nil̪    cok̪h̪    meg̪h̪    ʃrigal̪    motaleb

jute    t̪it̪e    gu̪r̪h̪e    mr̪ge    choʔe    dr̪p̪h̪e    məʋn̪e    ʃol̪e    dh̪əʋte    mr̪te  
 juto    t̪ito    gu̪r̪ho    mr̪igo    choʔo    dr̪iʃho    moumo    ʃolo    dh̪out̪o    mr̪ito

cak̪er̪e    sah̪es̪e    path̪er̪e    pag̪el̪e    kəʋʃel̪e    deʋer̪e  
 cak̪or̪    ʃah̪oʃ    path̪or̪    pagol̪    kouʃol̪    debor̪

tom̪er̪a    ʔuk̪er̪a    kam̪er̪a    cupeʔi    muc̪eki    tal̪epate    g̪əg̪en̪əbh̪el̪a  
 tom̪'ra    ʔuk̪'ra    kam̪'ra    cup̪'ʔi    muc̪'ki    tal̪'pat̪    g̪əg̪on̪'bh̪el̪a

lekh    lek̪h̪e    thak    th̪ak̪e    jan    jan̪e    j̪it̪eb̪e    j̪it̪eb̪o  
 lek̪h̪    lek̪ho    thak    th̪ako    jan    j̪ano    j̪it̪'bo    j̪it̪'bo

ʃun̪et̪e    ʃun̪et̪o    jag̪el̪e    jag̪el̪o    bh̪ij̪et̪e    tul̪eb̪e    ʃun̪el̪e  
 ʃun̪'to    ʃun̪'to    jag̪'lo    jag̪'lo    bh̪ij̪'to    tul̪'bo    ʃun̪'lo

bei    k̪ei    kh̪ei    nədi    y̪edi    y̪eti    beli    b̪asi    sel̪ile  
 boi    koi    khoi    nodi    j̪odi    j̪oti    boli    boʃi    ʃol̪il̪

calite colit	sehito sohit	jemidare jomidar	obhidhane obhidhan	gelite golito	polite polito						
pelu polu	peju poju	medhura modhur	merut morut	beluke boluk	phature photur	behut bohut					
3. i. a.	šre ēr	šre ōr	āke āk	hā hā	cī cī	cō cō	tū tū	tā tā	dhā dhā	rō rō	bhūi bhūi
yūi jūi	tūse tūj	thāi thāi	cāce cāc	chēke chēk	dāre dār	ghōte ghōt	kūdele kūdol	bēdhe bēdhe			
jāka jāka	dāri dāri	khōpa khōpa	dhūdhula dhūdhul	pēcife pēcif	hākaṛi hākaṛi						
b.	nem nōj	tem tōj	gam gaṇ	emje ōjfo	demjone dōjfon	semje sōjfo	themjone thōjfon	vemjo baṇfo			
semghate sōghat	semvit sōjbit	panju paṇju	suteram sutarāṇ	evetemse ebotōjfo	nemjoke nōjfoṇ						
semyemane sōjemon	vemjadhore bōjodhor	semjodhane sōjodhon	saṅghatike saṅghatik	kemseha kōjaha							
ii. aruh oruh	seroh soroh	puneh punaḥ	seheh sahoh	niheukhe niḥfukh	stehpare stoppor						
setayuh sotayuh	nēbhehed nōbhōjod	acetah acetaḥ	duhsameya duḥfomoy	bahsedene baḥsōdon							
nihkarone nikkeron	hōvihjese hōbifsej	venēkah bonoukah	nihkasene nikkaḥon	duhsōhe duḥsōho							

## Chapter 3.

## Class 1.

pekka pokko	kekkaḥa kōkkhoḥ	paggere pōggor	kaccere kōccor	iccha iccha	lejja lōjja	kujjhaṭṭika kujjhoṭika	
thatta ḥaṭṭa	uddiina uddin	seṇṇevate sōnnobato	uttere uttor	utthane utthan	ceḍḍa cōḍḍo	fuddhe fuddho	kanna kanna
chappere choppor	chabbife chabbif	ummede ummed	ḥeyya ḥōjja	phulle phullo	maṇḥḥanti maṇḥḥanti	hissa hiffa, hiesa	
vigēṇṇa biḥonno	sahayya sahajjo	sēddara sōddar	tibbat tibbot	periccheṇṇa poricchenno	vṛddhe briddho	citte citto	

## Class 2.

1. fēkti fokti	vagdane bagdan	udgamene udgemon	udghate udghat	oḍbhute oḍbhut	ḥeḍde ḥeḍdo	utpetha utpoth	deḍdhe deḍdho
gupte gupto	utkere utkor	utphulle utphullo	utpenne utponno	cōmetkare cōmotkar	utkhate utkhat	ḥētkone ḥētkon	



ii. olanjare ſanjke ſeṅgete ſeṅgheteṇe aṇeale laṇchena aṇjali  
 olanjkar ſanjkho ſaṅgeto ſaṅghaṭon aṇcol laṇchona oṇjoli

jhaṇjhaṭe kaṇṭekii kaṇṭha paṇḍa dhuṇḍhite ſanti penṭhii ninda  
 jhaṇjhaṭ kaṇṭeki kaṇṭha paṇḍa dhuṇḍhite ſanti penṭhi ninda

aṇḍhe ſaṃpede laṃphe aṃbere ſaṃbheve jṇane jījṇaṣa peṭnii peṃkti  
 aṇḍho ſaṃped laṃpho aṃbor ſaṃbhob ḡaṇ jiggāṣa potni poṅkti

iii. ſekṇa ſeṇḷeṅne atma pṇa vaḡmii  
 ſakkā ſaṇḷeṅno attā pṇa baḡḡi

iv. unneḡne ſeṇṇe nimnokṭe vaḡmeḡe ſeṇṇaṣa  
 unneḡno ſeṇṇo nimnokṭo baḡḡiṣy ſeṇṇaṣ

## Class 3.i.

vakye khyate yogyeta cyavene cyute jyoti jyetha tyā  
 bakko khāto jaggota cōbon cuto joti jētha tē

ṭhyeṇ dhyāḍa punye yetyacara etyutteme etyeḡe setye  
 ṭhāṇ dhāḍa punno jettācar ottuttomo ottay ſotto

bhrtyere mitthys geḍye dyumani ebadhye dhyane dhyeḡe nyāḡe  
 bhritter mitthā goddo dumoni ebaddho dhaṇ dhyeo nāy

nyuune upenyasse pyane reḡpye ebhyasse myao kalyane talavye  
 nun uponnāṣ peṇ rouppo obbhāṣ mao kollan talabbo

vyeṇḷeṇe ſyame meṇuṣṡe syade sahye udyane sendhya ſeṅkhyeḡe  
 beṇḷon ſaṇ meṇuṣṡo ſoḍ ſoḷḷho uddāṇ ſaṇḍha ſaṅkhyeo

## Class 3.ii.

kvecit pekve ucchvase jvale tvera tattve dhveṇse vilve  
 kocit pokko ucchaṣ jal tara totto dhaṇḷo billo

iiṣvere aṣaccha eṇveḡeṇe aṣadeṣe ſeṣaṣavatii ſvase jihva  
 iṣfor ſaccho oṇṇeṣon ſodeṣ ſaṣeṣṡoti ſaṣ jibha

## Class 3.iii.

a. terke muurkhe vergiiḡe diirghe varce muurechene ſeṛju verḡe  
 terko murkho borgiyo dirgho bareco murechon ſaṛju boro

kartavya  
 kortobbo

pedarthe kerddete erddhe durname ſeṛpe ſeṃerpaṇe dherme meryyada  
 pedartho kardoṭ erdhho durnam ſorpo ſeṃarpon dharmo morjeda

durlabhe  
 durlabh

vehirbhuto sarvva marjene marjene gerhane aryye visarge sarddare  
 bohirbhuto jarbo marjon marjon gorhon arjo bijargo jardar

iii.b. kruddhe grame ghreye vejre putre dravye praname priye  
 kruddho gram ghreyo bojro putro drobbo pronam priyo

bhremere vyagre afreye samraje srute aruu vedhre vrate frii  
 bhromor bagre arroy samra[ sruto aru badhre brat sri

hrite aru prarthana andhre ucchreye senkranta paktre sengreho  
 hrito aru prarthana andhre ucchroy senkranto paktro sengroho

## Class 3.iv.

ulka valgite phalgune ul[ gelpe guphe pragalbho gulme ulbo  
 ulka bolgite phalgun ul[ gelpe gulpho progalbho gulmo ulbo

klante glepane plavene tebleke mlane floke oflile hlade  
 klanto glepon plabon tablok mlan flock oflil hlal

## Class 4.i.

a. pascat niscaye nischidra ascarye prafno niskrte neste jyes[he  
 pascat niscay nischidro ascorjo prasno niskrito nast[ic jesh[he

nishthure krane nispetti niphale grijsme skende skhelite  
 nij[thur kri[no nij[potti nij[phal grij[fo skondo skholite

stobdhe sparje  
 stobdho sparjo

smere[ne sve[sthe snane snigdhe spe[ste sphu[ite vieme[ye  
 j[ron j[stho anan snigdho spo[fo sphu[ito bij[gy

smrti strii rastre  
 eriti strii raj[ro

b. aksere periksate tatksenat suuksame arkse matsara vip[sa  
 okkhor porikkhito tatkhonot fukkh[ sarkkho mat[or bip[sa

epsara khinne ksvir[ne  
 ap[ora khinno khinno

## Class 4.ii.

eperah[ne ahnik[ cihne medhyahne b[rahma prah[ne puurv[ah[ne  
 aporanho anhik cinho moddhanho bromha pranho purbbanho





PRINTED IN  
GREAT BRITAIN  
AT THE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
OXFORD  
BY  
CHARLES BATEY  
PRINTER  
TO THE  
UNIVERSITY





CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY,  
NEW DELHI

Issue Record.

Catalogue No. 417.8/Lam.-3374.

—Lambert, H.M.





